

T H E  
P R I N C I P L E S  
O F  
L A T I N A N D E N G L I S H  
G R A M M A R.

B Y

ALEXANDER ADAM, LL. D.

Rector of the High School of Edinburgh.

Grammaticæ est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secretorum comes, et quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet operis, quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammatices elementa; quia interiora velut sacri hujus adeuntibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modo acuere ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem ac scientiam possit.  
QUINCTILIAN.

---

The SECOND EDITION.

---

EDINBURGH:

Printed for the AUTHOR.

Sold by JAMES DICKSON, and WILLIAM CREECH.

MDCCLXXX.





## A D V E R T I S E M E N T.

**T**HE design of this performance is to facilitate the study of the Latin Tongue, by connecting it with that of the English ; and to make one book serve for the *Rudiments* and *Grammar* of both languages. The materials are collected chiefly from the grammatical works of Mr Ruddiman and Dr Lowth.

IN this Edition the most necessary Rules of Ruddiman's Latin Grammar are inserted, the Quantity of Syllables is marked, and the Examples, particularly of Nouns and Verbs, are enumerated so fully as to comprehend most of the radical words in the Latin Tongue.





T H E  
P R I N C I P L E S  
O F  
L A T I N · A N D · E N G L I S H  
G R A M M A R.

---

**G**RAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin or English Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin or the English language correctly.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; Words consist of one or more syllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of grammar.

---

L E T T E R S.

THAT part of grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.



The letters in Latin are twenty-five :

A, a ; B, b ; C, c ; D, d ; E, e ; F, f ; G, g ;  
H, h ; I, i ; J, j ; K, k ; L, l ; M, m ; N, n ;  
O, o ; P, p ; Q, q ; R, r ; S, s ; T, t ; U, u ;  
V, v ; X, x ; Y, y ; Z, z.

In English there is one letter more, namely, *W, w*.

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels ; *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All the rest are consonants.

A vowel is a letter which makes a full sound by itself ; as, *a, e*.

A consonant is a letter which cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel ; as, *b, d*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes, Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice ; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p, b ; t, d ; c, k, q*, and *g* : but *b, d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A semi-vowel, or half-vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice ; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are, *l, m, n, r, s, f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r* ; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable ; as, *bla, stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them ; as, *pe, be, &c.* : but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them ; as, *el, em, &c.*

The double consonants are *x, z*, and *j*. *X* is made up of *cs, ks, or gs*. *Z* seems not to be a double consonant in English. It has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being sounded somewhat more softly.

In Latin, *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

*I* in English is sometimes a consonant, as in *youth*.



*H* by some is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

## DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as in *aurum*, *Eurus*, *omneis*. To these, some, not improperly, add other three, namely, *ai*; as, in *Maia*; *oi*, as in *Troia*; and *ui*, as in *Harpuia*, or in *cui* and *huic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two, *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as *aetas*, or *ætas*; *oe*, or *ø*; as, *poena*, or *pœna*; in both which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

The English language abounds with improper diphthongs; the just pronunciation of which, practice alone can teach.

## SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as *a*, *to*, *strength*.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds; as, *in-fal-li-bi-li-ty*.

There can be no syllable without a vowel; and any vowel by itself, or joined with one or more consonants, may form a syllable.

Words consisting of one syllable, are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Dissyllables*; and of more than two, *Poly-syllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Poly-syllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. The following rules however may be observed.

1. A consonant between two vowels is joined to the latter; as *la-bour*.



2. When two or more consonants come between two vowels, they are joined to the latter vowel, if they can begin a word; but if not, they are to be divided, as the ear directs, thus, *re-frain*, *à-gree*, *let-ter*.

3. Compound words are divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *ex-it*, *up-on*.

*Observe*, A long syllable is thus marked [ - ]; as, *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent thus [ ^ ]; as, *amâris*. A short syllable is marked thus [ ° ]; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be found after *Sentences*.

## WORDS.

A word is one or more syllables joined together, which men have agreed upon to signify something.

That part of grammar which explains the nature and properties of words, is called *Etymology*.

All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus, in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home*," the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius*, pious; *ego*, I; *doceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word, and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *dedoceo*, I unteach; *egomet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pius*, pious; *doceo*, I teach.



A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *pietas*, piety; *doctrina*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight; *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle*; *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, *Conjunction*.

Four of them are declinable; *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, and *Participle*.

The other four are indeclinable; *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, and *Conjunction*.

In English the adjective and participle are not declined.

Declinable parts of speech are those which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the *article*.

The *article* is a word put before substantive nouns, to point them out, and to shew how far their signification extends.

The article neither signifies a thing, nor the quality of a thing, but makes the mind consider the word with which it is joined, in a particular point of view.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined; thus, *filius regis*, may signify, either, *a son of a king*, or *a king's son*; or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son*.

In English, there are two articles, *a*, and *the*: *a* becomes *an* before a vowel, or a silent *h*.

*A* is used to point out one single thing of a kind, without fixing precisely what that thing is: *The* determines what particular thing is meant.



*A man* means simply some one or other of that kind : *the man* signifies that particular man who is spoken of : The former is called the *Indefinite*, the latter the *Definite Article*.

*The* placed before certain common names, marks either a whole kind, or some individual of that kind, with which we are acquainted ; as, *the lion, the ox, &c.*

*A* can only be joined to substantive nouns in the singular number ; *the* may also be joined to plurals. *A* is likewise used before adjectives which express number, when many are considered as one whole ; as, *a thousand men, a few, a great many men.*

*The* is likewise applied to adjectives and adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree, to mark their sense more strongly ; as, “ *the wiser,*” “ *the better ;*” “ *the more I think of it, the better I like it.*”

## N O U N.

Noun is commonly divided into substantive and adjective.

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun* : it is only a word *added to* a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality ; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

## S U B S T A N T I V E.

A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing ; as, *boy, school, book, virtue.*

Substantives are of two sorts ; *proper*, and *common* names.

*Proper names* are the names appropriated to individuals ; as the names of persons and places : such are *George, London.*

*Common names* stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts ; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them ; as, *animal, man.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name ; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude : men have therefore been obliged to give the same  
common



common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, “He is *an* Alexander;” or, “*The* Alexander of his age.”

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness*, *goodness*, *whiteness*, *justice*, *piety*, &c.

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender*; females of the *feminine*; and all other things, of the *neuter gender*.

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender*, that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connections or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive: in Latin, by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, *regis*, of a king, &c.

## · E N G L I S H    N O U N S .

In English, nouns have only one case, namely, the genitive or possessive case; which is formed from the noun, by adding an *s*, with an apostrophe, or mark to separate it; as, *John's book*, the same with, *the book of John*. It was formerly written *Johnis book*.

Some have thought the *'s* a contraction for *his*; but improperly; because, instead of *the woman's book*, we cannot say, *the woman his book*. Others have imagined, and with more justness, that by the addition of the *'s* the substantive is changed into a possessive adjective.

When the noun ends in *s*, the sign of the possessive case is



is sometimes not added ; as, *for righteousness sake* ; and never to the plural number ending in *s* ; as, *on eagles wings*. Perhaps it would be better in the plural, when it ends in *s*, always to use the particle, and not the possessive form ; as, *on the wings of eagles*. Both the sign and the preposition seem sometimes to be used ; as, *a soldier of the king's* : but here there are two possessives ; for it means, *one of the soldiers of the king*.

In English, a singular noun is made plural by adding to it *s*, or, for the sake of sound, *es* ; as, *king, kings* ; *fox, foxes* ; *leaf, leaves* ; in which last, and in many others, *f* is also turned into *v*, to make the pronunciation easier.

Several plurals are formed by adding *en* ; as, *ox, oxen*. Of these some are contracted, or interpose a letter on account of sound ; as, *brethren, children, swine, kine, women, men*, &c. for *brotheren, sowen*, &c. *Swine* and *kine* are likewise used regularly, *sows, cows* ; and we seldom use *brethren* but in solemn discourse.

Nouns in *y* change *y* into *ie* ; as, *cherry, cherries*. *Cherry's* marks the possessive case.

Some nouns form the plural more irregularly ; as, *mouse, mice* ; *louse, lice* ; *tooth, teeth* ; *foot, feet*, &c.

The words *sheep, deer*, are the same in both numbers. Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, are used only in the singular, or in the plural form ; as, *wheat, pitch, gold, sloth, pride*, &c. and *bellows, scissors, lungs, bowels*, &c.

Several nouns in English are changed in their termination to express gender ; as, *prince, princess* ; *actor, actress* ; *lion, lioness* ; *hero, heroine*, &c.

The English language has a peculiar advantage over most other languages, in making all words whatever, except the names of males and females, to be of the neuter gender : unless when inanimate beings are personified, or considered as persons ; as, when we say of the sun, *he shines* ; or of the moon, *she shines*.

## L A T I N N O U N S.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders, Cases*, and *Numbers*.

There are three genders, *Masculine, Feminine*, and *Neuter*;

The



The cases are six, *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.*

There are two numbers, *Singular and Plural.*

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called, the *first, second, third, fourth, and fifth Declensions.*

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cado*, to fall; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative; which is therefore named *casus rectus*, the straight case; and the other cases, *casus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

### G E N E R A L R U L E S.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas, Thoma; Anchises, Anchise; Paris, Pari; Panthus, Panthu; Achilles, Achille*; names of men.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English:

1. With the indefinite article, *a king.*

Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.		<i>a king,</i>	Nom.		<i>kings,</i>
Gen.	<i>of</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Gen.	<i>of</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Dat.	<i>to or for</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Dat.	<i>to or for</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Acc.		<i>a king,</i>	Acc.		<i>kings,</i>
Voc.	<i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc.	<i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Abl.	<i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>a king:</i>	Abl.	<i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>kings.</i>

2. With



2. With the definite article, *the king*.

Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.		<i>the king,</i>	Nom.		<i>the kings,</i>
Gen.	<i>of</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Gen.	<i>of</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Dat.	<i>to or for</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Dat.	<i>to or for</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Acc.		<i>the king,</i>	Acc.		<i>the kings,</i>
Voc.	<i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc.	<i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Ab. <i>with, from, in, by, the king :</i>			Ab. <i>with, from, in, by, the kings.</i>		

## G E N D E R.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination, which is applied to females ; as, *bona penna*, a good pen, and not *bonus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine ; *hæc*, the feminine ; and *hoc*, the neuter.

## G E N E R A L R U L E S.

1. Names of males are masculine ; as, *Homērus*, Homer ; *pater*, a father ; *poëta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine ; as, *Helēna*, Helen ; *mulier*, a woman ; *uxor*, a wife ; *mater*, a mother.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender ; that is, either masculine or feminine ; as,

*Hic bos*, an ox ; *hæc bos*, a cow ; *hic parens*, a father ; *hæc parens*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adölescens,



Adölescens, } a young	Conjux, a husband or	Nemo, no body.
Juvenis, } man, or	wife.	Obses, an hostage.
	Conviva, a guest.	Patruclis, a cousin-ger-
Affinis, a relation by	Custos, a keeper.	man.
marriage.	Dux, a leader.	Præs, a surety.
Antistes, a prelate.	Hæres, an heir.	Princeps, a prince or
Auctor, an author.	Hostis, an enemy.	princeps.
Augur, a soothsayer.	Infans, an infant.	Sacerdos, a priest or
Canis, a dog or bitch.	Interpres, an interpre-	priests.
Civis, a citizen.	Judex, a judge. [ter.	Sus, a swine.
Cliens, a client.	Martyr, a martyr.	Testis, a witness.
Comes, a companion.	Miles, a soldier.	Vates, a prophet.
	Municeps, a burghess.	Vindex, an avenger. *

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine, thus, *antistita*, *clienta*, *hospita*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leæna*, a lioness; *equus*, *equa*; *mulus*, *mula*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advæna*, *assecla*, *accöla*, *exul*, *homo*, *latro*, *fur*, *opifex*, &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, *mancipium*, *servitium*, &c.

In like manner *opëræ*, *vigiliæ*, *excubiæ*, though applied to men, are always feminine.

## OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. I. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine: so *aquila*, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene* or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked,

\* *Conjux*, atque *parens*, *infans*, *patruelis*, et *heres*,  
*Affinis*, *vindex*, *judex*, *dux*, *miles*, et *hostis*,  
*Augur*, et *antistes*, *juvenis*, *conviva*, *sacerdos*,  
*Muniqueceps*, *vates*, *adolescens*, *civis*, et *auctor*,  
*Custos*, *nemo*, *comes*, *testis*, *sus*, *bosque*, *canisque*,  
*Interpresque*, *cliens*, *princeps*, *præs*, *martyr*, et *obses*.



we usually add the word *mas* or *femina*, as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *femina passer*, a female sparrow.

OBS. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine, because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, hic *Aprīlis*, April; hic *Aquīlo*, the north wind; hic *Tibēris*, the river Tiber; hic *Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, hæc *Matrōna*, the river Marne in France; hæc *Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; hoc *Soraſte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *regio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *navis*, are feminine. The gender however of many of these likewise depends on the termination.

Thus the following names of trees \* are masculine, *oleaster*, a wild olive-tree; *ramnus*, the white bramble, or buckthorn.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cytisus*, a kind of shrub; *rubus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *lotus*, the lot-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; so likewise are *suber*, the cork-tree; *ſiler*, the osier; *robur*, oak of the hardest kind; *acer*, the mapple-tree.

OBS. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender*; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

The first declension is known by the genitive and dative singular in *æ* diphthong.

It hath four terminations; *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.

\* Arbor femineis dabitur: sed mas *oleaster*,  
Et *ramnus*: petit hic potius *cytisus*que, *rubus*que:  
Hic quandoque *larix*, *lotus* volet, atque *cupressus*:  
Hoc quod in *um*, *suber*que, *ſiler* dant, *robur*, *acer*que.



*A* only is a Latin termination, and of the feminine gender ; as,

Penna, <i>a pen, fem.</i>		Terminations.
Singular.	Plural.	
<i>N.</i> penna, <i>a pen ;</i>	<i>N.</i> pennæ, <i>pens ;</i>	<i>a, æ,</i>
<i>G.</i> pennæ, <i>of a pen ;</i>	<i>G.</i> pennārum, <i>of pens ;</i>	<i>æ, arum,</i>
<i>D.</i> pennæ, <i>to a pen ;</i>	<i>D.</i> pennis, <i>to pens ;</i>	<i>æ, is,</i>
<i>A.</i> pennam, <i>a pen ;</i>	<i>A.</i> pennas, <i>pens ;</i>	<i>am, as,</i>
<i>V.</i> penna, <i>O pen ;</i>	<i>V.</i> pennæ, <i>O pens ;</i>	<i>a, æ,</i>
<i>A.</i> pennâ, <i>with a pen :</i>	<i>A.</i> pennis, <i>with pens.</i>	<i>a, is.</i>

In like manner decline,

Ærumna, <i>toil.</i>	Brassica, <i>collyflower.</i>	Concha, <i>a shell.</i>
Ala, <i>a wing.</i>	Bruma, <i>winter.</i>	Copia, <i>plenty.</i>
Alapa, <i>a blow.</i>	Bulla, <i>a bubble.</i>	Copula, <i>a bond. [shoe.</i>
Alauda, <i>a lark.</i>	Caliga, <i>an harness for the leg.</i>	Corrigia, <i>the latchet of a</i>
Alga, <i>sea-weed.</i>	Calumnia, <i>slander.</i>	Corona, <i>a crown.</i>
Aluta, <i>tanned leather.</i>	Camena, <i>a muse.</i>	Cortina, <i>a cauldron.</i>
Amita, <i>an aunt.</i>	Camera, <i>a vault.</i>	Costa, <i>a rib.</i>
Amphora, <i>a cask.</i>	Campāna, <i>a bell.</i>	Coxa, <i>the haunch.</i>
Ampulla, <i>a jug.</i>	Capsa, <i>a coffer. [ship.</i>	Crapula, <i>a surfeit.</i>
Ancilla, <i>an handmaid.</i>	Carina, <i>the keel of a</i>	Crena, <i>a notch.</i>
Anchora, <i>an anchor.</i>	Casa, <i>a cottage.</i>	Crepida, <i>a slipper.</i>
Ansa, <i>a handle.</i>	Castanea, <i>a chestnut.</i>	Creta, <i>chalk.</i>
Antenna, <i>a sail-yard.</i>	Catena, <i>a chain.</i>	Crista, <i>a crest.</i>
Aqua, <i>water.</i>	Caterva, <i>a body of men.</i>	Crumena, <i>a purse.</i>
Aquila, <i>an eagle.</i>	Cathedra, <i>a pulpit.</i>	Culcita, <i>a cushion.</i>
Ara, <i>an altar.</i>	Cauda, <i>the tail.</i>	Culina, <i>a kitchen.</i>
Aranea, <i>a spider.</i>	Caula, <i>a sheep-cote.</i>	Culpa, <i>a fault.</i>
Arca, <i>a chest.</i>	Causa, <i>a cause.</i>	Cupa, <i>a tun, a cup.</i>
Area, <i>an open place.</i>	Cavilla, <i>a banter.</i>	Cura, <i>care.</i>
Arēna, <i>sand.</i>	Cella, <i>a cell.</i>	Curia, <i>a senate-house.</i>
Argilla, <i>potter's earth.</i>	Cera, <i>wax.</i>	Cymba, <i>a boat.</i>
Arista, <i>an ear of corn.</i>	Ceremonia, <i>a ceremony.</i>	Epistola, <i>a letter.</i>
Arrha, <i>an earnest-pen-</i>	Charta, <i>paper.</i>	Eisca, <i>a bait.</i>
Arvina, <i>fat. [ny.</i>	Chorda, <i>a string.</i>	Faba, <i>a bean.</i>
Aula, <i>a hall.</i>	Ciconia, <i>a stork.</i>	Fabula, <i>a fable.</i>
Avia, <i>a grandmother.</i>	Cicuta, <i>hemlock.</i>	Fama, <i>fame.</i>
Afcia, <i>a fur.</i>	Cināra, <i>an artichoke.</i>	Farina, <i>meal.</i>
Aura, <i>a breeze.</i>	Cista, <i>a chest.</i>	Favilla, <i>embers.</i>
Balæna, <i>a whale.</i>	Clava, <i>a club.</i>	Fœmina, <i>a woman.</i>
Barba, <i>a beard.</i>	Cloaca, <i>a sink.</i>	Fenestra, <i>a window.</i>
Bellua, <i>any large beast.</i>	Cochlea, <i>a snail.</i>	Fera, <i>a wild beast.</i>
Bestia, <i>a beast.</i>	Cœna, <i>a supper.</i>	Ferula, <i>a rod.</i>
Beta, <i>beet, an herb.</i>	Columba, <i>a pigeon.</i>	Fibra, <i>a fibre.</i>
Blatta, <i>a moth.</i>	Coma, <i>the hair.</i>	Fibula, <i>a clasp.</i>
Bractea, <i>a thin leaf of gold.</i>	Comœdia, <i>a comedy.</i>	Fimbria, <i>a fringe.</i>
		Fistula, <i>a pipe.</i>



Festūca, *the shoot of a tree.*  
 Fistūca, *a rammer.*  
 Flamma, *a flame.*  
 Forma, *a form.*  
 Formīca, *an ant.*  
 Fovea, *a pit.*  
 Framea, *a short spear.*  
 Funda, *a sling.*  
 Furca, *a fork.*  
 Fuscīna, *a trident.*  
 Galea, *an helmet.*  
 Gaza, *a treasure.*  
 Gemma, *a gem.*  
 Gena, *the cheek.*  
 Genista, *broom.*  
 Gingīva, *the gum.*  
 Glarea, *gravel.*  
 Gleba, *a clod.*  
 Gula, *the gullet.*  
 Gutta, *a drop.*  
 Habēna, *a rein.*  
 Hara, *a bog-fly.*  
 Harūga, *a sacrifice.*  
 Hasta, *a spear.*  
 Hedēra, *ivy.*  
 Herba, *an herb.*  
 Hora, *an hour.*  
 Hostia, *a victim.*  
 Hydria, *a water-pot.*  
 Janua, *a gate.*  
 Insūla, *a mitre.*  
 Insūla, *an island.*  
 Ira, *anger.*  
 Juba, *the mane.*  
 Lacerna, *a riding coat.*  
 Lacryma, *a tear.*  
 Lacinia, *a fringe.*  
 Lactūca, *lettuce.*  
 Lagēna, *a flagon.*  
 Lama, *a ditch.*  
 Lamīna, *a plate.*  
 Lana, *wool.*  
 Lancea, *a lance.*  
 Lanista, *m, a fencing-master.*  
 Larva, *a mask.*  
 Laterna, *a lantern.*  
 Lepra, *the leprosy.*  
 Libra, *a pound.*  
 Lima, *a file.*  
 Linea, *a line.*

Lingua, *the tongue.*  
 Littera, *a letter.*  
 Locusta, *a locust.*  
 Lucerna, *a light.*  
 Luna, *the moon.*  
 Lympha, *water.*  
 Lyra, *a lyre.*  
 Machīna, *a machine.*  
 Macūla, *a stain.*  
 Mala, *the cheek-bone.*  
 Malva, *a mallow.*  
 Mamina, *a pap.*  
 Mantica, *a wallet.*  
 Mappa, *a napkin.*  
 Marra, *a mattock.*  
 Massa, *a lump.*  
 Matta, *a matt.*  
 Matūla, *a chamber-pot.*  
 Medulla, *marrow.*  
 Mensa, *a table.*  
 Merda, *dung.*  
 Merga, *a pitch-fork.*  
 Meta, *a goal.*  
 Mica, *a crumb.*  
 Mitra, *a mitre.*  
 Mola, *a mill.*  
 Monēta, *money.*  
 Mora, *a delay.*  
 Multa, *a fine.*  
 Musa, *a muse.*  
 Musca, *a fly.*  
 Myrrha, *myrrh.*  
 Mustēla, *a weasel.*  
 Nēnia, *a funeral-song.*  
 Norma, *a rule.*  
 Noverca, *a stepmother.*  
 Nympha, *a nymph.*  
 Occa, *an harrow.*  
 Ocrea, *a boot.*  
 Offa, *a morsel.*  
 Olea, *an olive.*  
 Olla, *a pot.*  
 Ora, *a coast.*  
 Pænūla, *a riding-coat.*  
 Pala, *a shovel.*  
 Palea, *chaff.*  
 Palla, *a large gown.*  
 Palma, *the palm.*  
 Palpebra, *the eye-lid.*  
 Papūla, *a pimple.*  
 Parma, *a shield.*

Patēra, *a goblet.*  
 Penuria, *want.*  
 Pera, *a purse.*  
 Persōna, *a mask.*  
 Pertica, *a pole.*  
 Pharetra, *a quiver.*  
 Phiāla, *a vial.*  
 Phoca, *a sea-calf.*  
 Pica, *a magpy.*  
 Pila, *a ball.*  
 Pila, *a pillar.*  
 Pincerna, *m. a butler.*  
 Pinna, *a fin.*  
 Pirāta, *m. a pirate.*  
 Pituīta, *phlegm.*  
 Placenta, *a cake.*  
 Plāga, *a climate.*  
 Plāga, *a blow.*  
 Planta, *a plant.*  
 Platēa, or Platēa, *a broad street.*  
 Pluma, *a feather.*  
 Podagra, *the gout.*  
 Pœna, *a punishment.*  
 Pompa, *a procession.*  
 Porta, *a gate.*  
 Præda, *plunder.*  
 Prora, *the prow.*  
 Procella, *a storm.*  
 Prosa, *prose.*  
 Pruīna, *hoar-frost.*  
 Pruna, *a burning-coal.*  
 Puella, *a girl.*  
 Pugna, *a battle.*  
 Pulpa, *the pulp.*  
 Purpūra, *purple.*  
 Pyra, *a funeral-pile.*  
 Rabūla, *m. a wrangler.*  
 Rana, *a frog.*  
 Resīna, *rosin.*  
 Rheda, *a chariot.*  
 Rima, *a chink.*  
 Ripa, *a bank.*  
 Rixa, *a scold.*  
 Rosa, *a rose.*  
 Rota, *a wheel.*  
 Ruga, *a wrinkle.*  
 Ruta, *rue.*  
 Saburra, *ballast.*  
 Saga, *a sorceress.*  
 Sagitta, *an arrow.*  
 Saliva, *spittle.*  
 Sandanapila,



Sandanapila, a bier.	Squama, a scale.	Trutina, a balance.
Sanna, a scoff.	Statēra, a balance.	Tuba, a trumpet.
Satyra, a satyr.	Stella, a star.	Tunica, a waistcoat.
Scala, a ladder.	Stiria, an icicle.	Turba, a crowd.
Scapha, a boat.	Stiva, the plow-tail.	Turma, a troop.
Scapula, the shoulder.	Stola, a gown.	Vagina, a scabbard.
Scena, a stage.	Strena, a new-year's gift.	Vena, a vein.
Scheda, a sheet or scroll.	Struma, a botch.	Venia, leave.
Scintilla, a spark.	Stupa, a tower.	Verna, m. an home-born slave.
Schola, a school.	Sublica, a pile.	Verruca, a wart.
Scurra, m. a buffoon.	Subucula, a shirt.	Vesica, the bladder.
Scutica, a whip.	Subula, an awl.	Vespa, a wasp.
Semita, a path.	Sura, the calf of the leg.	Via, a way.
Sentina, a sink.	Syllaba, a syllable.	Viola, a violet.
Sera, a lock.	Taberna, a shop.	Villa, a country-seat.
Serra, a saw.	Tabula, a table.	Victima, a victim.
Seta, a bristle.	Tæda, a torch.	Vindemia, vintage.
Sibylla, a sibyl.	Tænia, a ribbon.	Vipera, a viper.
Sica, a dagger.	Tegula, a tile.	Virga, a rod.
Siliqua, an husk.	Tela, a web.	Vita, life.
Silva, a wood.	Terebra, a worm.	Vitta, a fillet.
Simia, an ape.	Terra, the earth.	Viverra, a secret.
Situla, a bucket.	Tescera, a dye.	Ulna, an ell.
Solca, a shoe.	Testa, an earthen pot.	Uiva, sedge.
Spelunca, a cave.	Theca, a case.	Ulula, an owl.
Spica, an ear of corn.	Tibia, a pipe.	Umbra, a shade.
Sphæra, a sphere.	Tinea, a moth.	Unda, a wave.
Spina, the back-bone.	Tragula, a javeline with a barbed head.	Urina, urine.
Sponda, a bedstead.	Trulla, a trowel.	Urna, an urn.
Spongia, a sponge.		Uva, a grape.
Spuma, foam.		Zona, a zone.

## EXCEPTIONS.

Except. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *comēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dama*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover is neuter.

Except. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *ai*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulai*; and sometimes likewise in *as*; which form the compounds of *familia* usually retain; as, *matr-familias*, the mistresses of a family; genit. *matris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias*, or *matres-familiarum*.

Except. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *abus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:



Anīma, *the soul.*

Dea, *a goddess.*

Equa, *a mare.*

Filia, or Nata, *a daughter.*

Liberta, *a freed-woman.*

Mula, *a she-mule.*

Thus, *deābus, filiābus, &c.*

## G R E E K N O U N S.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek.

Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine: nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; *as*, *Ænēas*, *Ænēæ*, *Æneas*, the name of a man; *Boreas*, *æ*, the north wind. But among the poets they have commonly *an* in the accusative singular, as likewise have Greek nouns in *a*, thus, *Ænēam*, or *Ænean*: so *Ossa*, *Ossam*, or *Ossan*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined,

*Anchīses, Anchises, the name of a man.*

*Singular.*

*Nom.* Anchises,

*Acc.* Anchisen,

*Gen.* Anchisæ,

*Voc.* Anchise,

*Dat.* Anchisæ,

*Abl.* Anchise.

*Penelōpe, Penelope, the name of a woman.*

*Singular.*

*Nom.* Penelope,

*Acc.* Penelopen,

*Gen.* Penelopes,

*Voc.* Penelope,

*Dat.* Penelope,

*Abl.* Penelope.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

Nouns in *es* and *e* have sometimes the accusative in *em*, but more seldom; and are likewise, though but rarely, declined regularly both in the nominative, and in the other cases, like *penna*.

## S E C O N D D E C L E N S I O N.

The second declension is known by the genitive singular in *i*, and the dative in *o*.

It has seven terminations, *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*, *os*, *on*.

Nouns



Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter ; the rest are masculine ; as,

*Gener, a son-in-law, masc.*

		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Terminations.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>gener,</i>	<i>Nom. genĕri,</i>		<i>er, ir, us, i,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>genĕri,</i>	<i>Gen. generōrum,</i>		<i>i. orum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>genero,</i>	<i>Dat. generis,</i>		<i>o, is,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>generum,</i>	<i>Acc. generos,</i>		<i>um, os,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>gener,</i>	<i>Voc. generi,</i>		<i>er, ir, e, i,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>genero.</i>	<i>Abl. generis.</i>		<i>o. is.</i>

After the same manner decline *socer, -ĕri*, a father-in-law ; *puer, -ĕri*, a boy ; *vir, vīri*, a man, and its compounds, *levir*, a brother-in-law ; *duumvir, triumvir*, &c. Also *satur*, full, (of old *satūrus*) an adjective ; likewise *furcifer*, a villain ; *Lucifer*, the morning-star, &c.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive ; as,

*Ager, a field, masc.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ager,</i>	<i>Nom. agri,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>agri,</i>	<i>Gen. agrōrum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>agro,</i>	<i>Dat. agris,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>agrum,</i>	<i>Acc. agros,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ager,</i>	<i>Voc. agri,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>agro.</i>	<i>Abl. agris.</i>

In like manner decline,

*Aper, a wild-boar.*

*Arbiter, a judge.*

*Auster, the south-wind.*

*Cancer, a crab-fish.*

*Caper, an he-goat.*

*Coluber, a serpent.*

*Culter, the coulter of a plough,  
a knife.*

*Faber, a workman.*

*Magister, a master.*

*Minister, a servant.*

Also *liher*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri* ; but *liber, free*, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the God of wine, have *libĕri*.



Domīnus, *a lord, masc.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> dominus,	<i>Nom.</i> domini,
<i>Gen.</i> domini,	<i>Gen.</i> dominōrum,
<i>Dat.</i> domino,	<i>Dat.</i> dominis,
<i>Acc.</i> dominum,	<i>Acc.</i> dominos,
<i>Voc.</i> domine,	<i>Voc.</i> domini,
<i>Abl.</i> domino.	<i>Abl.</i> dominis.

## In like manner decline,

Abācus, *a desk.*  
 Aculeus, *a sting.*  
 Agnus, *a lamb.*  
 Alnus, f. *an alder-tree.*  
 Alveus, *the channel of a river.*  
 Angūlus, *a corner.*  
 Anīmus, *the mind.*  
 Annus, *a year.*  
 Annūlus, *a ring.*  
 Anus, *a circle.*  
 Armus, *the shoulder of a bea<sup>2</sup>.*  
 Asīnus, *an ass.*  
 Autumnus, *the autumn.*  
 Avus, *a grandfather.*  
 Bajūlus, *a porter.*  
 Bolus, *a morsel.*  
 Bombus, *a buzz.*  
 Caballus, *a pack-horse.*  
 Cachinnus, *a loud laugh.*  
 Caduceus, *a wand.*  
 Cadus, *a cask.*  
 Calāmus, *a reed.*  
 Calāthus, *a basket.*  
 Callus, *hard flesh.*  
 Camīnus, *a chimney.*  
 Campus, *a plain.*  
 Canthārus, *a jug.*  
 Carduus, *a thistle.*  
 Carpus, *the wrist.*  
 Carrus, *a cart.*  
 Caseus, *cheese.*  
 Catīnus, *a platter.*  
 Cedrus, f. *a cedar-tree.*  
 Cervus, *a stag.*  
 Cetus, *a whale. pl. cetē, n. indecl.*

Chorus, *a choir.*  
 Cibus, *meat.*  
 Cincinnus, *a curled lock.*  
 Cinnus, *a medley.*  
 Cippus, *a grave-stone.*  
 Circīnus, *a pair of compasses.*  
 Circus, *a circle.*  
 Cirrus, *a tuft.*  
 Citrus, f. *a citron-tree.*  
 Clathrus, *a grate.*  
 Clavus, *a nail.*  
 Clivus, *a hill.*  
 Clypeus, *a round shield.*  
 Colāphus, *a box on the ear.*  
 Contus, *a long pole.*  
 Conus, *a cone.*  
 Cophīnus, *a basket.*  
 Corvus, *a raven.*  
 Corylus, f. *a hagle-tree.*  
 Cothurnus, *a buskin.*  
 Cucullus, *a hood.*  
 Cuculus, *a cuckoo.*  
 Culeus, *a leathern bag.*  
 Culmus, *a stalk.*  
 Cumūlus, *an heap.*  
 Cuneus, *a wedge.*  
 Cunicūlus, *a rabbit.*  
 Cyāthus, *a cup.*  
 Cygnus, *a swan.*  
 Digītus, *a finger.*  
 Discus, *a quoit.*  
 Dumus, *a bush.*  
 Dolus, *deceit.*  
 Echīnus, *an urchin.*  
 Elēgus, *an elegy.*  
 Equus, *an horse.*

Erēbus, *hell.*  
 Eurus, *the east-wind.*  
 Fagus, f. *a beech-tree.*  
 Famūlus, *a man-servant.*  
 Favonius, *the west-wind.*  
 Favus, *an honey-comb.*  
 Fiscus, *the exchequer.*  
 Floccus, *a lock of wool.*  
 Fluvius, *a river.*  
 Focus, *a hearth.*  
 Fraxīnus, f. *an ash-tree.*  
 Fritillus, *a dice-box.*  
 Fucus, *a drone bee, paint.*  
 Fumus, *smoke.*  
 Fundus, *a farm.*  
 Fungus, *a mushroom.*  
 Furnus, *an oven.*  
 Fufus, *a spindle.*  
 Gallus, *a cock.*  
 Gibbus, *a swelling.*  
 Gladius, *a sword.*  
 Globus, *a globe.*  
 Grabātus, *a couch.*  
 Gracūlus, *a jackdaw.*  
 Gyrus, *a circle.*  
 Hædus, *a kid.*  
 Hamus, *a hook.*  
 Hircus, *a goat.*  
 Herus, *a master.*  
 Hortus, *a garden.*  
 Humērus, *a shoulder.*  
 Juncus, *a bulrush.*  
 Juvenus, *a bullock.*  
 Lacertus, *the arm.*  
 Lanius, *a butcher.*  
 Laqueus, *a noose.*

Lectus,



Lectus, <i>a couch.</i>	Oculus, <i>the eye.</i>	Servus, <i>a slave.</i>
Limus, <i>slime.</i>	Orcus, <i>hell.</i>	Sirius, <i>the dog-star.</i>
Limbus, <i>a selvedge.</i>	Ornus, <i>f. a wild ash.</i>	Soccus, <i>a kind of shoe.</i>
Lituus, <i>a crooked staff.</i>	Pagus, <i>a canton.</i>	Somnus, <i>sleep.</i>
Lucus, <i>a sacred grove.</i>	Palus, <i>a stake.</i>	Sparus, <i>a spear.</i>
Lumbus, <i>the loin.</i>	Pannus, <i>cloth.</i>	Stimulus, <i>a spur.</i>
Lupus, <i>a wolf.</i>	Pesulus, <i>a bolt.</i>	Stylus, <i>a style.</i>
Malleus, <i>a mallet.</i>	Pileus, <i>a hat.</i>	Sulcus, <i>a furrow.</i>
Magus, <i>a magician.</i>	Pilus, <i>a hair.</i>	Sufurrus, <i>a whisper.</i>
Malus, <i>the mast of a ship.</i>	Pirus, <i>f. a pear-tree.</i>	Talus, <i>the ankle.</i>
Malus, <i>f. an apple-tree.</i>	Polus, <i>the pole.</i>	Taurus, <i>a bull.</i>
Mannus, <i>a little horse.</i>	Pontus, <i>the sea.</i>	Terminus, <i>a bound.</i>
Mendicus, <i>a beggar.</i>	Pöpus, <i>a people.</i>	Titulus, <i>a title.</i>
Milvus, <i>a kite.</i>	Pöpus, <i>f. a poplar-tree.</i>	Torus, <i>a couch.</i>
Modus, <i>a manner.</i>	Porcus, <i>a hog.</i>	Tribulus, <i>a thistle.</i>
Modius, <i>a bushel.</i>	Porrus, <i>a leak.</i>	Triumphus, <i>a triumph.</i>
Morus, <i>f. a mulberry-tree.</i>	Procus, <i>a suitor.</i>	Truncus, <i>the trunk.</i>
Mucus, <i>the filth of the nose, snot.</i>	Privignus, <i>a stepson.</i>	Tubus, <i>a tube.</i>
Mulus, <i>a mule.</i>	Psittacus, <i>a parrot.</i>	Tumulus, <i>a hillock.</i>
Murus, <i>a wall.</i>	Pugnus, <i>the fist.</i>	Turdus, <i>a thrush.</i>
Muscus, <i>moss.</i>	Pullus, <i>a chicken.</i>	Thesaurus, <i>a treasure.</i>
Myrtus, <i>f. a myrtle-tree.</i>	Pupus, <i>a babe.</i>	Thalāmus, <i>a bed-chamber.</i>
Nævus, <i>a spot.</i>	Puteus, <i>a well.</i>	Tyrannus, <i>a tyrant.</i>
Nanus, <i>a dwarf.</i>	Qualus, <i>a basket.</i>	Vallus, <i>a stake.</i>
Nasus, <i>the nose.</i>	Racemus, <i>a cluster of grapes.</i>	Ventus, <i>the wind.</i>
Nervus, <i>a string.</i>	Radius, <i>a ray.</i>	Vicus, <i>a village.</i>
Nidus, <i>a nest.</i>	Ramus, <i>a branch.</i>	Villus, <i>hair.</i>
Nimbus, <i>a cloud.</i>	Remus, <i>an oar.</i>	Vitellus, <i>the yolk of an egg.</i>
Nodus, <i>a knot.</i>	Rivus, <i>a rivulet.</i>	Vitricus, <i>a stepfather.</i>
Notus, <i>the south wind.</i>	Riscus, <i>a trunk.</i>	Vitulus, <i>a calf.</i>
Nothus, <i>a bastard.</i>	Rogus, <i>a funeral-pile.</i>	Ulmus, <i>f. an elm-tree.</i>
Numerus, <i>a number.</i>	Saccus, <i>a sack.</i>	Umbilicus, <i>the navel.</i>
Nucleus, <i>a kernel.</i>	Scirpus, <i>a rush.</i>	Urceus, <i>a pitcher.</i>
Nummus, <i>a piece of money.</i>	Scopulus, <i>a rock.</i>	Ursus, <i>a bear.</i>
Nuntius, <i>a messenger.</i>	Scopus, <i>a mark.</i>	Urus, <i>a buffalo.</i>
Oceanus, <i>the ocean.</i>	Scrupus, <i>a little stone.</i>	Zephyrus, <i>the west-wind.</i>
	Scyphus, <i>a bowl.</i>	

Regnum, *a kingdom, neut.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. regnum,	Nom. regna,
Gen. regni,	Gen. regnōrum,
Dat. regno,	Dat. regnīs,
Acc. regnum,	Acc. regna,
Voc. regnum,	Voc. regna,
Abl. regno.	Abl. regnis.



## In like manner decline,

Adagium, <i>a proverb.</i>	Frumentum, <i>corn.</i>	Probrum, <i>a disgrace.</i>
Allium, <i>garlick.</i>	Fruſtum, <i>a bit or piece.</i>	Pulpitum, <i>a pulpit.</i>
Antrum, <i>a cave.</i>	Granum, <i>a grain.</i>	Roſtrum, <i>the beak of a ſhip.</i>
Apſam, <i>parsley.</i>	Graphium, <i>a pencil.</i>	Sabbatum, <i>the Sabbath.</i>
Armentum, <i>an herd.</i>	Gremium, <i>the lap.</i>	Sabulum, <i>gravel.</i>
Aſtrum, <i>a ſtar.</i>	Jugulum, <i>the throat.</i>	Sagum, <i>a ſoldier's cloak.</i>
Aſylum, <i>a ſanctuary.</i>	Labium, <i>the lip.</i>	Salum, <i>the ſea.</i>
Atrium, <i>a court.</i>	Lardum, <i>bacon.</i>	Sandalium, <i>a ſlipper.</i>
Auxilium, <i>affiſtance.</i>	Laſanum, <i>a chamber-pot.</i>	Saxum, <i>a ſtone.</i>
Barathrum, <i>an abyſs.</i>	Licum, <i>the woof.</i>	Scamnum, <i>a footſtool.</i>
Baſium, <i>a kiſs.</i>	Lignum, <i>wood.</i>	Scortum, <i>an harlot.</i>
Bellum, <i>war.</i>	Lilium, <i>a lily.</i>	Scrinium, <i>a coffer.</i>
Brachium, <i>the arm.</i>	Linum, <i>lint.</i>	Scutum, <i>a ſhield.</i>
Capitrum, <i>an halter.</i>	Lorum, <i>a thong.</i>	Seculum, <i>an age.</i>
Caſtrum, <i>a caſtle.</i>	Lucrum, <i>gain.</i>	Serum, <i>whey.</i>
Centrum, <i>the centre.</i>	Lutum, <i>clay.</i>	Sevum, <i>tallow.</i>
Cerebrum, <i>the brain.</i>	Luſtrum, <i>a ſurvey.</i>	Signum, <i>a ſign.</i>
Cilium, <i>the eye-laſhes.</i>	Macellum, <i>the ſhambles.</i>	Sinum, <i>a milk-pail.</i>
Cœnum, <i>mire.</i>	Membrum, <i>a member.</i>	Solium, <i>a throne.</i>
Collum, <i>the neck.</i>	Mentum, <i>the chin.</i>	Solum, <i>the ground.</i>
Compitum, <i>a ſtreet.</i>	Metallum, <i>metal.</i>	Spatium, <i>a ſpace.</i>
Corium, <i>a hide.</i>	Minium, <i>vermilion.</i>	Spolium, <i>ſpoil.</i>
Cribrum, <i>a ſieve.</i>	Monſtrum, <i>a prodigy.</i>	Stabulum, <i>a ſtable.</i>
Damnum, <i>loſs.</i>	Oppidum, <i>a town.</i>	Stadium, <i>a furlong.</i>
Delubrum, <i>a temple.</i>	Oſtrum, <i>purple.</i>	Stagnum, <i>a pond.</i>
Dolium, <i>a caſk.</i>	Otium, <i>eaſe.</i>	Stannum, <i>tin.</i>
Donum, <i>a gift.</i>	Oſtium, <i>the door.</i>	Stragulum, <i>a blanket.</i>
Dorſum, <i>the back.</i>	Ovum, <i>an egg.</i>	Stuprum, <i>debauchery.</i>
Electrum, <i>amber.</i>	Pabulum, <i>fodder.</i>	Telum, <i>a weapon.</i>
Elementum, <i>an element.</i>	Pallium, <i>a cloak.</i>	Templum, <i>a church.</i>
Ephippium, <i>a ſaddle.</i>	Pilum, <i>a javelin.</i>	Tergum, <i>a back.</i>
Exemplum, <i>an example.</i>	Piſum, <i>peaſe.</i>	Triclinium, <i>a dining-room.</i>
Fanum, <i>a temple.</i>	Plauſtrum, <i>a waggon.</i>	Tripudium, <i>a dancing.</i>
Faſcinum, <i>witchcraft.</i>	Plumbum, <i>lead.</i>	Vallum, <i>a rampart.</i>
Fastigium, <i>the top.</i>	Porrum, <i>a leek.</i>	Venenum, <i>poison.</i>
Ferrum, <i>iron.</i>	Pomum, <i>an apple.</i>	Velum, <i>a ſail.</i>
Filum, <i>a thread.</i>	Prædium, <i>a farm.</i>	Vestibulum, <i>a porch.</i>
Flagrum, <i>a whip.</i>	Præmium, <i>a reward.</i>	Verbum, <i>a word.</i>
Fœnum, <i>hay.</i>	Prælium, <i>a battle.</i>	Vinum, <i>wine.</i>
Folium, <i>a leaf.</i>	Prandium, <i>a dinner.</i>	Vitium, <i>vice.</i>
Forum, <i>a marketplace.</i>	Pratum, <i>a meadow.</i>	Vitrum, <i>glass.</i>
Fretum, <i>a narrow ſea.</i>	Pretium, <i>a price.</i>	

## EXCEPTIONS.

Except. I. The following nouns in *us* are feminine ; *humus*, the ground ; *alvus*, the belly ; *vannus*, a ſieve.

And



And the following nouns, derived from Greek words in *os*.

Abyſſus, a bottomleſs pit.	Dialectus, a dialect.	Papȳrus, paper.
Antidōtus, an anti- dote.	Diametros, the dia- meter of a circle.	Periōdus, a period.
Arctos, one of the con- ſtellations.	Diphthongus, a diph- thong.	Perimetros, the cir- cumference.
Carbāſus, a ſail.	Erēmus, a deſart.	Pharus, a watch- tower.
	Methōdus, a method.	

Except. 2. The nouns which follow, are either maſcu-  
line or feminine :

Atōmus, an atom.	Barbitus, a harp.	Groſſus, a green fig.
Balānus, the fruit of the palm-tree.	Camēlus, a camel.	Penus, a ſtorehouſe.
	Colus, a diſtaff.	Phaſēlus, a little ſhip.

Except. 3. *Virus*, poiſon ; *pelāgus*, the ſea, are neuter.

Except. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either maſ-  
culine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

*Note.* When the genitive ſingular ends in *ii*, the latter  
*i* is ſometimes taken away by the poets, for the ſake of  
quantity ; as, *tūgurī* for *tugurii*.

## GENERAL RULES.

1. The nominative in *us* makes the vocative  
in *e* ; as, *ventus*, *vente*.

2. Proper names in *ius* loſe *us* in the voca-  
tive ; as, *Georgius*, *Georgi*.

*Filius*, a ſon, alſo hath *fili* ; *genius*, one's guardian an-  
gel, *geni* ; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus* in the vocative,  
and in the plural more frequently *dii*, and *diis*, than *dēi*,  
and *deis*.

The poets ſometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us*  
like the nominative ; as, *fluvius*, *Latinus*, for *fluvie*, *La-  
tine*, Virg. This alſo occurs in proſe, but more rarely.  
Thus, *Audi tu populus*, for *popule*. Liv.

*Os* and *on* are Greek terminations ; as, *Alphēos*, a river  
in Greece ; *Ilion*, the city Troy ; and are often changed  
into *us* and *um* by the Latins ; as, *Alphēus*, *Ilium*.

Greek nouns have ſometimes the genitive ſingular in *o*, the  
accuſative in *on*, and the genitive plural in *ōn* ; as, *Androgeos*,  
gen.



gen. *Androgeo*, acc. *Androgeon*; *Delus* or *Delos*, acc. *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island; *Georgica*, gen. pl. *Georgicôn*, books which treat of husbandry, as Virgil's *Georgicks*.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns of the third declension have the genitive singular in *is*, and the dative in *i*; as,

Sermo, <i>speech, masc.</i>		Caput, <i>the head, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. sermo,	N. sermōnes,	N. caput,	N. capita,
G. sermōnis,	G. sermōnum,	G. capitis,	G. capitum,
D. sermoni,	D. sermonibus,	D. capiti,	D. capitibus,
A. sermonem,	A. sermones,	A. caput,	A. capita,
V. sermo,	V. sermones,	V. caput,	V. capita,
A. sermone.	A. sermonibus.	A. capite.	A. capitibus.

  

Rupes, <i>a rock, fem.</i>		Sedile, <i>a seat, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. rupe,	N. rupes,	N. sedile,	N. sedilia,
G. rupis,	G. rupium,	G. sedilis,	G. sedilium,
D. rupi,	D. rupibus,	D. sedili,	D. sedilibus,
A. rupem,	A. rupes,	A. sedile,	A. sedilia,
V. rupe,	V. rupes,	V. sedile,	V. sedilia,
A. rupe.	A. rupibus.	A. sedili.	A. sedilibus.

  

Lapis, <i>a stone, masc.</i>		Iter, <i>a journey, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. lapis,	N. lapīdes,	N. iter,	N. itinēra,
G. lapīdis,	G. lapidum,	G. itinēris,	G. iterum,
D. lapidi,	D. lapīdibus,	D. itineri,	D. itinēribus,
A. lapidem,	A. lapides,	A. iter,	A. itinera,
V. lapis,	V. lapides,	V. iter,	V. itinera,
A. lapide.	A. lapidibus.	A. itinere.	A. itineribus.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i, o, y, c, d, l, t, x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with the second; and *s* with all the other declensions. *A, i, and y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these: nom. sing. *a, e, &c.*; gen. *is*; dat. *i*; acc. *em*; voc. *the same with*



with the nominative; abl. *e*, or *i*: nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es*, *a*, or *ia*; gen. *um*, or *ium*; dat. and abl. *ibus*.

*RULES for knowing the gender of nouns of the third declension, and for the formation of the genitive, according to the different terminations.*

*A, E, I, and Y.*

1. Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, and *y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis*; as, *diadēma*, *diademātis*, a crown; *dogma*, *-ātis*, an opinion.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *sedīle*, *sedilis*, a seat. So *rete*, a net; *monīle*, a necklace; *ovīle*, a sheep-fold; *ancīle*, a shield; *cochleāre*, a spoon.

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, *gummi*, gum: but some Greek nouns add *ītis*; as, *hydromēli*, *hydromelītis*, water and honey fōdden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, *moly*, *molyos*, an herb.

*O.*

2. Nouns in *o* \* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis*; as,

*sermo*, *sermōnis*, speech; *draco*, *draconis*, a dragon.—So,

*Aquilo*, the north wind.

*Bubo*, an owl.

*Bufo*, a toad.

*Calo*, a soldier's boy.

*Carbo*, a coal.

*Caupo*, an innkeeper.

*Cerdo*, a cobbler.

*Crabro*, a wasp.

*Fullo*, a fuller of cloth.

*Helluo*, a glutton.

*Histrion*, a player.

*Latro*, a robber.

*Leno*, a pimp.

*Lurco*, a glutton.

*Mango*, a slave-merchant.

*Mucro*, the point of a weapon.

*Nebūlo*, a knave.

*Pavo*, a peacock.

*Præco*, a common crier.

*Pulmo*, the lungs.

*Salmo*, a salmon.

*Spado*, an eunuch.

*Temo*, the pole of a coach.

*Tiro*, a raw soldier.

*Umbo*, the boss of a shield.

Except. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as,

*Oratio*, a speech.

*Opinio*, an opinion.

*Perduellio*, treason.

*Rebellio*, rebellion.

*Religio*, religion.

*Talio*, like for like.

\* Hic dat O: femineis *ballo*, cum *caro*, dantur, et *echo*; Quæque in IO, seu sint verbo, seu nomine nata, Rem (numeris demptis) aliquam sine corpore signant.

But



But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine ; as,

Papilio, *a butterfly.*

Pugio, *a dagger.*

Scipio, *a staff.*

Vespertilio, *a bat.*

Ternio, *the number three.*

Quaternio, — *four.*

Senio, — *six.*

Except. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go* \* are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis* ; as, *arundo*, *arundinis*, a reed ; *imāgo*, *imaginis*, an image. — So

Ærūgo, *rust, (of brass).*

Caligo, *darkness.*

Cartilāgo, *a gristle.*

Crepido, *a creek.*

Farrāgo, *a mixture.*

Ferrūgo, *rust (of iron).*

Formido, *fear.*

Fuligo, *soot.*

Grando, *bail.*

Hirūdo, *a horse-leech.*

Hirundo, *a swallow.*

Lanugo, *down.*

Testudo, *a tortoise.*

Virgo, *a virgin.*

Uligo, *the natural moisture of the earth.*

But the following are masculine :

Cardo, -inis, *a hinge.*

Cudo, -ōnis, *a leather cap.*

Harpāgo, -ōnis, *a drag.*

Ligo, -ōnis, *a spade.*

Margo, -inis, *the brink of a river ; also fem.*

Ordo, -inis, *order.*

Tendo, -inis, *a tendon.*

Udo, -ōnis, *a linen or woollen sack.*

*Cupido*, desire, is often masculine with the poets ; but in prose always feminine.

Except. 3. The following nouns have *inis* :

Apollo, -inis, *the god Apollo.*

Homo, -inis, *a man or woman.*

Nemo, -inis, *m. or f. no body.*

Turbo, -inis, *m. a whirlwind.*

*Caro*, flesh, fem. has *carnis* : *Anio*, masc. the name of a river, *Aniēnis* : *Nerio*, *Neriēnis*, the wife of the god Mars ; from the obsolete nominatives *Anien*, *Nerien*.

Except. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *us* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular ; as, *Dido*, the name of a woman ; genit. *Didūs* ; dat. *Didô*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly ; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis* : so *echo*, -us, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood ; *halo*, -onis, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

\* Adjice femineis DO, GO : sed mascula cudo, Harpago, sic ordo, simul udo, tendo, ligoque. Rarius hæc margo vati est, hic sæpe cupido. Arrhabo, cum cardo, muliebria vix imitanda.



## C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l*\*, are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is* ; as,

*animal*, *animālis*, a living creature ; *cervīcal*, *-ālis*, a bolster ; *veſtigal*, *-ālis*, a tax ; *halec*, *halēcis*, a kind of pickle.

Except. *Fel*, *fellis*, n. *gall*.

*Lac*, *lactis*, n. *milk*.

*Mel*, *mellis*, n. *honey*.

*Mugil*, *īlis*, m. *a mullet-fiſh*.

*Sal*, *sālis*, m. or n. *ſalt*.

*Sāles*, pl. m. *witty ſayings*.

*Sol*, *sōlis*, m. *the ſun*.

*D* is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is* ; as, *David*, *Davidis*.

## N.

4. Nouns in *n*† are masculine, and add *is* in the Genitive ; as,

*Canon*, *-ōnis*, *a rule*.

*Dæmon*, *-ōnis*, *a ſpirit*.

*Delphin*, *-īnis*, *a dolphin*.

*Hymen*, *-ēnis*, *the god of marriage*.

*Ren*, *rēnis*, *the reins*.

*Splen*, *ſplēnis*, *the ſpleen*.

*Titan*, *-ānis*, *the ſun*.

Except. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their Genitive in *īnis* ; as, *flumen*, *flumīnis*, a river.—So

*Agmen*, *an army or march*.

*Alūmen*, *alum*.

*Bitūmen*, *a kind of clay*.

*Cacūmen*, *the top*.

*Carmen*, *a ſong*.

*Colūmen*, *a ſupport*.

*Crimen*, *a crime*.

*Exāmen*, *a ſwarm of bees*.

*Germen*, *a ſprout*.

*Gramen*, *grafs*.

*Nomen*, *a name*.

*Omen*, *a preſage*.

*Semen*, *a ſeed*.

*Stāmen*, *the warp*.

*Subtēmen*, *the wocf*.

The following nouns are likewise neuter :

*Gluten*, *-īnis*, *glue*.

*Unguen*, *-īnis*, *ointment*.

*Inguen*, *-īnis*, *the groin*.

*Pollen*, *-īnis*, *fine flour*.

\* Quod fit in L, vel T, C, vel M, neutralibus adde :  
Mascula *ſol*, *mugil*, ſeu *ſal*, quod rarius hoc vult.

† Masculeum capit N. Finita in MEN dato neutris,  
Quæque ſecunda creat, cum *gluten* & *inguen* & *unguen* :  
Addideris *pollen*. Sindon petit hæc, & *aëdon* ;  
*Alcyonem* junges, data poſtea queis comes icon.



Except. 2. The following masculines have *inis* ; *pecten*, a comb ; *tubicen*, a trumpeter ; *tibicen*, a piper.

Except. 3. The following nouns are feminine : *Sindon*, -*onis*, fine linen ; *ædon*, -*onis*, a nightingale ; *Halcyon*, -*onis*, a bird called the King's fisher ; *icon*, -*onis*, an image.

Except. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis* ; as, *Laomedon*, -*ontis*, a king of Troy.

### AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar*\* and *ur*† are neuter, and add *is* to form the Genitive ; as,

*calcar*, *calcāris*, a spur ; *murmur*, *murmūris*, a noise. — So

*Guttur*, -*ūris*, the throat.

*Pulvīnar*, -*āris*, a pillow.

*Jubar*, -*āris*, a sun-beam.

*Sulphur*, -*ūris*, sulphur.

*Nectar*, -*āris*, drink of the gods.

Except. *Ebur*, -*ōris*, n. ivory.

*Jecur*, -*ōris*, or *jecinōris*, n. the liver.

*Far*, *farris*, n. corn.

*Robur*, *ōris*, n. strength.

*Femur*, *ōris*, n. the thigh.

*Salar*, -*aris*, m. a trout.

*Furfur*, -*ūris*, m. bran.

*Turtur*, -*ūris*, m. a turtle-dove.

*Fur*, *fūris*, m. a thief.

*Hepar*, -*ātis*, or -*ātos*, n. the liver.

*Vultur*, -*ūris*, m. a vulture.

### ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er*‡ and *or*|| are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is* ; as,

*anser*, *ansēris*, a goose ; *agger*, -*ēris*, a rampart ; *carcer*, -*ēris*, a prison ; *asser*, -*ēris*, a plank ; *dolor*, *ōris*, pain ; *color*, *ōris*, a colour : — So,

*Cruor*, gore.

*Odor*, a smell.

*Sopor*, sleep.

*Honor*, honour.

*Olor*, a swan.

*Soror*, f. a sister.

*Nidor*, a strong smell.

*Rumor*, a report.

*Vapor*, a vapour.

*Rhetor*, a retorician, has *rhetōris*.

\* Postulat AR neutrum : sed masculeum *salar* optat.

† Hoc dat UR. Hic *furfur* capiet, cum *vulture turtur*.

‡ ER capit hic. Neutrum plantæ fructusve requirunt :

At *tuber* hic fructus ; *tuber* quemcunque tumorem

Significans neutrale petit ; cumque *ubere spinther*,

*Verque*, cadaver, iter. Dabit hic aut hæc tibi linter.

|| Hic dat OR. Hæc *arbor* : cor, adorque hoc, *marmor* & *aquer*.

Except.



Except. 1. The following nouns are neuter :

Ador, -oris, *fine wheat*.

Æquor, -ōris, *a plain, the sea*.

Cadāver, -ēris, *a dead carcase*.

Cicer, -ēris, *vetches*.

Cor, -cordis, *the heart*.

Iter, itinēris, *a journey*.

Marmor, -ōris, *marble*.

Papāver, -ēris, *poppy*.

Piper, -ēris, *pepper*.

Spinther, -ēris, *a clasp*.

Tuber, -ēris, *a swelling*.

Uber, -ēris, *a pap, or fatness*.

Ver, vērīs, *the spring*.

Arbor, arbōris, *a tree*, is feminine.

Except. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris* in the genitive ; as, *hic imber, imbris*, a shower.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris* ; as, *venter, ventris*, the belly ; *pater, patris*, a father : but *crater*, a cup, has *cratēris* ; *later*, a tile, *latēris* ; *Jupiter*, the chief of the heathen gods, has *Jovis* ; *linter, -tris*, a little boat, is masc. or fem.

### AS.

7. Nouns in *as* \* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis* ; as,

*ætas, ætātis*, an age ; *pietas, pietātis*, piety ; *æstas, -ātis*, the summer ; *voluptas, -ātis*, pleasure ; *anas, -ātis*, a duck.

Except. 1. As, assis, m. *a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts*.

Mas, mās, m. *a male*.

Vas, vādis, m. *a surety*.

Vas, vās, n. *a vessel*.

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem. ; as, *sextans*, 2 ounces ; *quadrans*, 3 ; *triens*, 4 ; *quincunx*, 5 ; *semis*, 6 ; *septunx*, 7 ; *bes*, 8 ; *denarius*, 9 ; *dextans*, 10 ; *deunx*, 11 ounces.

Except. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine ; some feminine ; and some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. as, *gigas, gigantis*, a giant ; *adamas, -antis*, an adamant ; *elephas, -antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *adis* or *ados* ; as, *lampas, lampadis*, or *lampados*, a lamp : likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcadis*, or *-ados*. Those that are neuter have *ātis* ; as, *buceras, -ātis*, an herb ; *artocreas, -ātis*, a pie.

\* AS petit hæc. Neutrum est *vas vasis*, queisque Pelasgi Dant *atis* in patrio : quibus *antis*, mascula sunt.



## ES.

8. Nouns in *es*\* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is* ; as,

*rupes, rupis*, a rock ; *nubes, nubis*, a cloud. — So,

*Ædes, or -is*, a temple.

plur. a house.

*Cautes*, a rock.

*Clades*, an overthrow.

*Crates*, a hurdle.

*Fames*, hunger.

*Fides*, a fiddle.

*Lues*, a plague.

*Moles*, a heap.

*Nates*, the buttock.

*Palumbes*, m. or f. a

pigeon.

*Proles*, an offspring.

*Pubes*, youth.

*Soboles*, an offspring.

*Strages*, a slaughter.

*Sudes*, a stake.

*Tabes*, a consumption.

*Vulpes*, a fox.

Except. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive :

*Ales, -itis*, a bird.

*Ames, -itis*, a fowler's staff.

*Aries, -etis*, a ram.

*Bes, beſſis*, two thirds of a pound.

*Cespes, -itis*, a turf.

*Eques, -itis*, a horseman.

*Fomes, -itis*, fuel.

*Gurges, -itis*, a whirlpool.

*Heres, -edis*, an heir.

*Indiges, -etis*, a man deified.

*Interpres, -etis*, an interpreter.

*Limes, -itis*, a limit or bound.

*Miles, -itis*, a soldier.

*Obses, -idis*, a hostage.

*Palmes, -itis*, a vine-branch.

*Paries, -etis*, a wall.

*Pes, pedis*, the foot.

*Pedes, -itis*, a footman.

*Poples, -itis*, the ham of the leg.

*Præses, -idis*, a president.

*Satelles, -itis*, a life-guard.

*Stipes, -itis*, the stock of a tree.

*Termes, -itis*, an olive bough.

*Trames, -itis*, a path.

*Vates, vatis*, a prophet.

*Verres, verris*, a boar-pig.

But *ales*, *miles*, *heres*, *interpres*, *obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Except. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive :

*Abies, -etis*, a fir tree.

*Ceres, -ëris*, the goddess of corn.

*Merces, -edis*, a reward.

*Merges, -itis*, a handful of corn.

*Quies, -etis*, rest.

*Requies, -etis* ; or *requiçi*, (of the fifth declension), rest.

*Seges, -etis*, growing corn.

*Teges, -etis*, a mat or coverlet.

*Tudes, -is*, or *-itis*, a hammer.

\* Hæc dabit ES. Capiant *ales* hic hæcve, *palumbes*,  
Atque *dies* ; sed mas *proles* : mas *poples* & *ames*,  
*Fomes*, *pes*, *paries*, *palmes*, cum limite *stipes* ;  
Quæ addes *trames*, *termes*, cum *gurgite cespes*.  
Et quæ fonte fluunt Graio : sed neutra capeſſunt  
*Hippomanes*, *panaces*, *nepenthes*, sic *cacoëthes*.



To these add the following adjectives :

Ales, -ītis, <i>swift</i> .	Sospes, -ītis, <i>safe</i> .
Dives, -ītis, <i>rich</i> .	Superstes, -ītis, <i>surviving</i> .
Hebes, -ētis, <i>dull</i> .	Teres, -ētis, <i>round and long</i> .
Perpes, -ētis, <i>perpetual</i> .	Locuples, -ētis, <i>rich</i> .
Præpes, -ētis, <i>swift-winged</i> .	Manfues, -ētis, <i>gentle</i> .

Except. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine ; but some are neuter ; as *hoc cacoēthes*, an evil custom, *hippomānes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal ; *panāces*, the herb all-heal ; *nepenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, a Cretan, have *ētis* in the genitive, as, *hic magnes*, *magnētis*, a load-stone ; *tapes*, -*ētis*, tapestry ; *lebes*, -*ētis*, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis* or *is* ; as, *Dares*, *Darētis*, or *Daris* ; which is also sometimes of the first declension.

### IS.

9. Nouns in *is* \* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative ; as,

*auris, auris*, the ear ; *avis, avis*, a bird. — So,

Apis, <i>a bee</i> .	Naris, <i>the nostril</i> .	Sodālis, m. <i>a companion</i> .
Bilis, <i>the gall</i> .	Ovis, <i>a sheep</i> .	Vallis, <i>a valley</i> .
Classis, <i>a fleet</i> .	Pellis, <i>a skin</i> .	Vestis, <i>a garment</i> .
Felis, <i>a cat</i> .	Pestis, <i>a plague</i> .	Vitis, <i>a vine</i> .
Foris, <i>a door</i> , plur.	Ratis, <i>a raft</i> .	
fores, -ium, <i>more frequent</i> .	Rudis, <i>a rod</i> .	

Except 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule :

Axis, axis, <i>an axle-tree</i> .	Collis, <i>a hill</i> .	Follis, <i>a pair of bellows</i> .
Aquālis, <i>a water-pot</i> , <i>an ewer</i> .	Cenchris, <i>a kind of serpent</i> .	Fustis, <i>a staff</i> .
Callis, <i>a beaten road</i> .	Ensis, <i>a sword</i> .	Mensis, <i>a month</i> .
Caulis, <i>the stalk of an herb</i> .	Fascis, <i>a bundle</i> .	Mugilis, or -il, <i>a mullet-fish</i> .

\* Is dabo femineis. Sunt mascula *piscis* & *axis*,  
*Glis*, *callis*, *vermis*, *vestis*, *mensis*, *cucumisque*,  
*Mugilis* & *postis*, cum *sanguine*, *fascis* & *orbis*,  
*Fustis* item, *collis*, *caulisque*, & *follis*, & *ensis*,  
*Serpentemque* notans *cenchrus*, cum *vomere*, *torris*,  
In NIS finitum *Latium*, *lapis*, *unguis*, *aqualis*.



Orbis, *a circle, the world.*

Piscis, *a fish.*

Postis, *a post.*

Torris, *a fire-brand.*

Unguis, *the nail.*

Vermis, *a worm.*

Vectis, *a lever.*

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *panis*, bread; *crinis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *īdis*; as, *tyrannis*, *tyrannīdis*, tyranny.

Except. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

Cinis, -ēris, *ashes.*

Cucūmis, -is, or -ēris, *a cucumber.*

Dis, dītis, *the god of riches, or rich, adj.*

Glis, glīris, *a rat.*

Impubis, or impubes, -is, or -ēris, *not marriageable.*

Lapis, -īdis, *a stone.*

Pubis or pubes, -is, or oftener -ēris, *marriageable.*

Pulvis, -ēris, *dust.*

Quiris, -ītis, *a Roman.*

Samnis, -ītis, *a Samnite.*

Sanguis, -īnis, *blood.*

Semis, -issis, *the half of any thing.*

Vomis, or -er, -ēris, *a ploughshare.*

*Samnis* and *Quiris*, *pubis* and *impubis*, from the nature of their signification, may also be feminine, being properly adjectives. *Pulvis* and *cinis* are likewise sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable.

Except. 3 \*. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule;

Amnis, *a river.*

Anguis, *a snake.*

Canālis, *a conduit-pipe.*

Clunis, *the buttock.*

Corbis, *a basket.*

Finis, *the end: fines, the boundaries of a field, or territories, is always masc.*

Scrobis, or scrobs, *a ditch.*

Torquis, *a chain.*

Except. 4. The following feminines form the genitive differently from the general rule; *cassis*, *cassīdis*, an helmet; *cuspis*, *cuspidis*, the point of a spear; *lis*, *lītis*, strife.

Except. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: Some have *eos* or *ios*; as, *hæresis*, -*eos*, or -*ios*, or -*is*, a heresy: Some have *īdis*, or *īdos*; as, *Paris*, -*īdis*, or -*īdos*, the name of a man; *aspis*,

\* Hic aut hæc *finis*, *clunis*, cum *torque canalis*,  
Dant, *scrobis*, ac *anguis*: *corbis* muliebri præoptat:  
Masculæo potius gaudent *pulvis*, *cinis*, *amnis*.



-īdis, f. an asp; *ephemēris*, -īdis, f. a day-book; *Iris*, -īdis, f. the rainbow; *pyxis*, -īdis, f. a box. Part have īdis; as, *Psophis*, -īdis, the name of a city: others have īnis; as, *Eleusis*, -īnis, the name of a city: and some have entis; as, *Simois*, *Simcentis*, the name of a river. *Charis*, one of the graces, has *Charitis*.

## O S.

10. Nouns in *os*\* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis*; as, *nepos*, -ōtis, a grandchild.

Except. 1. The following are feminine:

*Arbos*, or -or, -ōris, a tree.

*Cos*, cōtis, a whet-stone.

*Dos*, dōtis, a dowry.

*Eos*, eōis, the morning.

*Glos*, glōris, the husband's sister,  
or brother's wife.

Except. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

*Flos*, flōris, a flower.

*Honos*, or -or, -ōris, honour.

*Labos*, or -or, -ōris, labour.

*Lepos*, or -or, -ōris, wit.

*Mos*, mōris, a custom.

*Ros*, rōris, dew.

*Custos*, -ōdis, a keeper; also fem.

*Heros*, herōis, a hero.

*Minos*, -ōis, a king of Crete.

*Tros*, Trōis, a Trojan.

*Bos*, bōvis, m. or f. an ox or cow.

Except. 3. *Os*, ossis, a bone; and *ōs*, oris, the mouth, are neuter.

## U S.

11. Nouns in *us*† are neuter, and have their genitive in *ūs*; as,

*pectus*, pectōris, the breast; *tempus*, tempōris, time. So,

*Corpus*, a body.

*Decus*, honour.

*Dedēcus*, disgrace.

*Facinus*, a great action.

*Fænus*, usury.

*Frigus*, cold.

*Littus*, a shore.

*Nemus*, a grove.

*Pecus*, cattle.

*Penus*, provisions.

*Pignus*, a pledge.

*Stercus*, dung.

*Tergus*, a hide.

\* OS maribus detur. Sunt neutra *chaos*, *melos*, *os*, *os*;  
Postulat hæc *arbos*, *cos*, *dos*, & origine Græcâ  
Orta *eos*, *arctos*, *perimetros* cum *diametro*.

† Postulat US neutrum, quoties id tertia flectit.

Except.



Except. 1. The following neuters have *ĕris*.

Acus, acĕris, *chaff*.

Funus, -ĕris, *a funeral*.

Fœdus, -ĕris, *a covenant*.

Genus, -ĕris, *a kind, or kindred*.

Glomus, -ĕris, *a clew*.

Latus, -ĕris, *the side*.

Munus, -ĕris, *a gift, or office*.

Olus, -ĕris, *pot-herbs*.

Onus, -ĕris, *a burden*.

Opus, -ĕris, *a work*.

Pondus, -ĕris, *a weight*.

Rudus, -ĕris, *rubbish*.

Scelus, -ĕris, *a crime*.

Sidus, -ĕris, *a star*.

Vellus, -ĕris, *a fleece of wool*.

Viscus, -ĕris, *an entrail*.

Ulcus, -ĕris, *a boil*.

Vulnus, -ĕris, *a wound*.

*Glomus*, a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glomi* of the second declension. *Venus*, the goddess of love, and *vetus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ĕris*.

Except. 2\*. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously :

Incus, -ūdis, *an anvil*.

Palus, -ūdis, *a pool, or morass*.

Pecus, (*not used*) -ūdis, *a sheep*.

Subscus, -ūdis, *a dove-tail*.

Tellus, -ūris, *the earth*.

Juventus, -ūtis, *youth*.

Salus, -ūtis, *safety*.

Senectus, -ūtis, *old age*.

Virtus, -ūtis, *virtue*.

Intercus, -ūtis, *an hydropsy*.

*Intercus* is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Except. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive ; as,

Crus, crūris, *the leg*.

Jus, jūris, *law or right ; also broth*.

Pus, pūris, *the corrupt matter of any sore*.

Rus, rūris, *the country*.

Thus, thūris, *frankincense*.

So Mus, mūris, *masc. a mouse*.

*Ligus*, or *-ur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris* ; *lepus*, *masc.* a hare, *lepōris* ; *sus*, *masc.* or *fem.* a swine, *suis* ; *grus*, *masc.* or *fem.* a crane, *gruis*.

*OEdīpus*, the name of a man, has *OEdipōdis* ; sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *OEdīpi*. The compounds of *pus* have *ōdis* ; as, *tripūs*, *masc.* a tripod, *tripōdis* ; but *lagōpus*, *-ōdis*, a kind of bird, or the herb hares-foot, is *fem.* Names of cities have *untis* ; as, *Trapezus*, *Trapezuntis* ; *Opus*, *Opuntis*.

\* *Femineum voluere palus, subscusque, salusque, Quæque senex, juvenis, cum servio, nomina formant, Et virtus, incus. At mascula sunt lepus & mus, Et pus compositum : petit at muliebre lagopus.*



## YS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all derived from the Greek, and for the most part feminine. In the genitive, they have sometimes *yis*, or *yos*; as, *hæc chelys*, *chelyis*, or *-yos*, a harp; *Capys*, *Capyis*, or *-yos*, the name of a man: sometimes they have *ȳdis*, or *ȳdos*; as, *hæc chlamys*, *chlamȳdis* or *chlamȳdos*, a soldier's cloak; and sometimes *ȳnis*, or *ȳnos*; as, *Trachys*, *Trachȳnis*, or *Trachȳnos*, the name of a town.

## ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus*\* are,

Æs, æris, n. *brass* or *money*.  
Fraus, fraudis, f. *fraud*.

Laus, laudis, f. *praise*.  
Præs, prædis, m. or f. *a surety*.

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*; *Tereus*, *Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables; thus, *Orphēus*, genit. *Orphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphei*, and that into *Orphēi*.

*S with a consonant before it.*

14. Nouns ending in *s*† with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as,

*trabs*, *trābis*, a beam; *scōbs*, *scōbis*, saw-dust; *hiems*, *hiēm-  
mis*, winter; *gens*, *gentis*, a nation; *stips*, *stīpis*, alms;  
*pars*, *partis*, a part; *sors*, *sortis*, a lot; *mors*, *-tis*, death.

Except. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chalybs, -ȳbis, *steel*.

Dens, -tis, *a tooth*.

Fons, -tis, *a well*.

Gryps, gryphis, *a griffon*.

Hydrops, -ōpis, *the dropsy*.

Merops, -ōpis, *a wood-pecker*.

Mons, -tis, *a mountain*.

Pons, -tis, *a bridge*.

Seps, sēpis, *a kind of serpent*.

\* *Æs* neutrale petit: *laus*, *fraus*, *muliebria* funto.

† *S* dato femineis, si consona ponitur ante.

Mascula sed *pons*, *fons*, *mons*, *seps*, dum denotat anguem;

Et queis *P* præit *S* polysyllaba, *forcipe* dempto,

*Dens*que, *chalybs*, cum *gryphe rudens*, quod rariùs hæc vult.

Hic aut hæc *serpens* dat, *scrobs*, *stirps* truncus, *adeps*que.

Dans *animans* genus omne, tamen muliebri præoptat.

Except.



Except. 2. The following are either masculine or feminine :

Adeps, adipis, *fatness*.

Rudens, -tis, *a cable*.

Scrobs, scröbis, *a ditch*.

Serpens, -tis, *a serpent*.

Stirps, stirpis, *the root of a tree*.

But *stirps*, an offspring, or extraction, is always feminine.

*Animans*, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Except. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as *hæc forceps*, *forcipis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps*, -*ipis*, a prince, or princeps: so likewise *cælebs*, *cælîbis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *caput* have *cîpîtis*; as, *præceps*, *præcipitis*, headlong. *Auceps*, a fowler has *aucûpis*.

Except. 4. The following feminines have *dis* :

Frons, frondis, *the leaf of a tree*.

Glans, glandis, *an acorn*.

Juglans, -dis, *a walnut*.

Lens, lendis, *a nit*.

So *libripens*, *libripendis*, a weigher; *nefrens*, -dis, a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as, *concors*, *concordis*, agreeing. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Except. 5. *Iens*, going; and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens*, *euntis*; *quiens*, *queuntis*; *rediens*, *redeuntis*; *nequiens*, *nequeuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Except. 6. *Tiryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tirynthis*.

## T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *caput*, the head, which is neuter, and has *capîtis* in the genitive. In like manner, its compounds, *sincîput*, *sincîpîtis*, the forehead; and *occîput*, -*itis*, the hind-head.



## X.

16. Nouns in *x* \* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as, *vox, vōcis*, the voice; *lux, lūcis*, light. — So,

<i>Arx, arcis</i> , a castle.	<i>Fax, -cis</i> , a torch.	<i>Nux, nūcis</i> , a nut.
<i>Cervix, -īcis</i> , the neck.	<i>Filix, -īcis</i> , a fern.	<i>Pax, -ācis</i> , peace.
<i>Cicātrix, -īcis</i> , a scar.	<i>Lanx, -cis</i> , a plate.	<i>Pix, pīcis</i> , pitch.
<i>Cornix, -īcis</i> , a crow.	<i>Lodix, -īcis</i> , a sheat.	<i>Radix, -īcis</i> , a root.
<i>Fæx, -cis</i> , dregs.	<i>Merx, -cis</i> , merchant- dise.	<i>Salix, -īcis</i> , a willow.
<i>Falx, -cis</i> , a scythe.		

Except. 1. Polyfyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thorax, -ācis*, a breast-plate. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *īcis*; as, *pollex, -īcis*, the thumb. — So,

<i>Apex, the top of any thing.</i>	<i>Frutex, a scrub.</i>	<i>Ramex, a rupture.</i>
<i>Caudex, the trunk of a tree.</i>	<i>Latex, any liquor.</i>	<i>Sorex, a rat.</i>
<i>Culex, a gnat.</i>	<i>Murex, a shell-fish, purple.</i>	<i>Vertex, the crown of the head.</i>
	<i>Pulex, a flea.</i>	

*Vervex*, a wedder sheep, has *vervēcis*; *fænisex*, a mower of hay, *fænisēcis*.

To these masculines add,

<i>Calix, -īcis</i> , † a cup.	<i>Oryx, -ŷcis</i> , a wild-goat.
<i>Calyx, -ŷcis</i> , the bud of a flower.	<i>Phænix, -īcis</i> , a bird so called.
<i>Coccyx, -ŷgis</i> , vel -ŷcis, a cuckoo.	<i>Tradux, -ūcis</i> , a graff, or off-set of a vine; also fem.
<i>Fornix, -īcis</i> , a vault.	

But the following polyfyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine:

<i>Fornax, -ācis</i> , a furnace.	<i>Forfex, -īcis</i> , a pair of scissors.
<i>Panax, -ācis</i> , the herb all-heal.	<i>Halex, -ēcis</i> , a herring.
<i>Smilax, -ācis</i> , the herb rope-weed.	<i>Supellex, supellectilis</i> , household furniture.
<i>Carex, -īcis</i> , a sedge.	

Except. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

\* Hæc petit X. *Ax, ex* maribus polyfyllaba junge:  
Dic tamen hæc *fornax, smilax, carex*, velut *halex*,  
Et cum prole *panax*, & *forfex* atque *supellex*.

† Maseula funto *calix, phænix*, pro vermeque *bombyx*,  
Et *coccyx, fornix*, & *onyx* vas, aut lapis unde  
Vas fit; *oryx, tradux, grex* his adjunge *calyx*que.  
Femineo interdum data *tradux* cum grege cernes.

Calx,



Calx, -cis, \* *the beel, or the end of any thing, the goal; but calx, lime, is always fem.*

Cortex, -icis, *the bark of a tree.*

Hystrix, -icis, *a porcupine.*

Imbrex, -icis, *a gutter-tile for carrying off rain.*

Limax, -ācis, *a snail.*

Lynx, -cis, *an ounce, a beast of very quick sight.*

Obex, -icis, *a bolt or bar.*

Perūix, -icis, *a partridge.*

Pumex, -icis, *a pumice-stone.*

Rumex, -icis, *sorrel, an herb.*

Sandix, -icis, *a purple colour.*

Silex, -icis, *a flint.*

Varix, -icis, *a swollen vein.*

Except. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive :

Aquilex, -ēgis, *a well-maker.*

Conjux, or -ux, -ūgis, *a husband or wife.*

Frux, (*not used*) frūgis, f. *corn.*

Grexx, grēgis, m. or f. *a flock.*

Lex, lēgis, f. *a law.*

Phalanx, -angis, f. *a phalanx.*

Remex, -īgis, *a rower.*

Rex, rēgis, *a king.*

Nix, nīvis, f. *snow.*

Nox, noctis, f. *night.*

Senex, sēnis, (*an adj.*) *old.*

Except. 4. Greek nouns in x, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns; thus, *bombyx, bombycis*, a silk-worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *onyx*, masc. or fem. *onychis*, a precious stone; *larynx, laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe; *Phryx, Phrygis*, a Phrygian; *strix, -īgis*, f. a screechowl; *Styx, -ygis*, f. a river in hell; *Bibrax, Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

## DATIVE SINGULAR.

The dative singular ends in *i*; as, *sermōni*.

Anciently it also ended in *e*; as, *Hæret pede pes*, foot sticks close to foot, Virg.

## ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR†.

The accusative singular ends in *em*, as, *sermōnem*.

\* Hæc modò femineis, maribus modò juncta videbis;  
Calx pro parte pedis metâve laboris, & bystrix,  
Imbrex; sardonychem jungas, rumicem silicemque:  
Hic magè vult cortex & obex, cum pumice varix:  
Hæc potiùs limax, lynx, & cum sandice perdix.

† Finit in *em* quartus. Petit im sibi ravis, amussis,  
Vis cucumisque simul, tussis, sitis atque sinapis,  
Cannabis & gummis, buris, conjunge mephitim.  
Adde urbes, aliosque locos, amnesque, deosque,  
Is quibus est recto: sed & hæc dant in quoque quarto.

Except.



Except. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im* :

Amullis, f. a mason's rule.

Buris, f. the beam of a plough.

Cannābis, f. hemp.

Cucūmis, m. a cucumber.

Gummi, f. gum.

Mephitis, f. a damp or strong smell.

Ravis, f. hoarseness.

Sināpis, f. mustard.

Sitis, f. thirst.

Tussis, f. the cough.

Vis, f. strength.

To these add names of rivers, and some other proper names ; as, *Tibēris*, *Tibērim*, the Tiber ; which sometimes make the accusative in *in* ; as, *Bætīn*, *Serāpin*, &c.

Except. 2\*. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im* ; as,

Clavis, f. a key.

Cutis, f. the skin.

Febris, f. a fever.

Navis, f. a ship.

Pelvis, f. a basin.

Puppis, f. the stern of  
a ship.

Restis, f. a rope.

Secūris, f. an ax.

Sementis, f. a sowing.

Strigilis, f. a horse-comb.

Turris, f. a tower, &c.

Thus, *navem*, or *navim* ; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c.

Except. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accusative variously :

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* † impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a* ; as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados* ; *lampadem*, or *lampada*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it : *Tros*, *Trōis*, *Troem*, and *Troa*, a Trojan ; *heros*, a hero ; *Minos*, a king of Crete. The three following have only *a* : *Pan*, the god of shepherds ; *æther*, the sky ; *delphin*, a dolphin ; thus, *Pāna*, *æthēra*, *delphīna*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in* ; sometimes in *idem*, never *ida* ; as, *Paris*, *Paridis* or *Paridos* ; *Parim* or *Parin*, sometimes *Paridem*, never *Parida*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *ida*, but rarely *im* or *in* ; as, *Elis*, *Elidis* or *Elidos*, *Elidem* or *Elida* ; seldom *Elim* or *Elin* ;

\* Sæpiùs *im turris*, *puppis*, cum *reste securis* :

*Em*, sed & *im* quandoque, volunt sibi *febris*, *aqualis*,

Et *navis*, *pelvis*, *clavis* ; sic *lens*, *strigilisque*,

*Sementisque*, *cutis*. Cumulant his plura vetusti.

† Impurè in patrio casu crescentia Græca,

Sæpe & *Tros*, *Minos*, *heros*, quantum per *a* formant :

EUS *æ* vult. Nix *em* dato *Pan*, cumque *æthere delphin*.



a city in Greece. In like manner, feminines in *ys* -*ŷdos*, have *ŷdem* or *ŷda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as, *chlamys*, -*ŷdem*, or -*ŷda*, not *chlamyn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metamorphōsis*, -*eos*, or -*ios*, *metamorphosim* or -*in*, a change: *Tethys*, -*vos*, or -*vis*; *Tethym* or -*yn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Theseus*, *Thesea*.

### ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

The ablative singular ends in *e*; as, *sermone*.

Except. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *calcar*, *calcāri*; *sedile*, *sedīli*; *animal*, *animāli*. Except proper names, as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town; and the following neuters in *ar*:

*Far*, *farre*, *corn*.

*Hepar*, -*āte*, *the liver*.

*Jubar*, -*āre*, *a sun-beam*.

*Nectar*, -*āre*, *drink of the gods*.

*Par*, *pāre*, *a match*, *a pair*.

*Sal*, *sāle*, *salt*.

Except. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*: but *cannābis*, *Bætis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns, which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ē* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre*, or *turri*: but *restis*, a rope; and *cutis*, the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns, which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, particularly names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habitāt Carthagine* or *Carthagini*.

Except. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bipennis*, -*i*, an halbert; *molāris*, -*i*, a millstone; *quadrirēmis*, -*i*, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprīlis*, -*i*; *December*, -*bri*, &c. But *rudis*, a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *juvēnis*, a young man, have only *e*; and likewise those ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *us*; as,

*Adolescens*,



Adolescens, a young man. Princeps, a princ. Torrens, a brook.  
 Infans, an infant. Senex, an old man. Vigil, a watchman.

Thus, *adlescente, infante, sene, &c.*

Except. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys, Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermones, rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as *puppes, puppeis*, or *puppis*.

Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *capita, sedilia*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as,

*sedile, sedili, sedilium; turris, turre* or *turri, turrium; caput, capite, capitum*.

Except. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *māre, marium*; *vas*, a surety, *vādium*: but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civitātum*, and sometimes *civitatium*.

Except. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular have also *ium*; as, *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.



But the following have *um*: *parens*, *vates*, *panis*, *juvenis*, and *canis*.

Except. 3\*. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Caro, carnis, f. *flesh*.

Cohors, -tis, f. *a company*.

Cor, cordis, n. *the heart*.

Cos, cotis, f. *a bone or rubetstone*.

Dos, dōtis, f. *a dowry*.

Faux, faucis, f. *the jaws*.

Glis, gliris, m. *a rat*.

Lar, laris, m. *a household-god*.

Linter, -tris, m. or f. *a little boat*.

Lis, litis, f. *strife*.

Mus, mūris, m. *a mouse*.

Nix, nīvis, f. *snow*.

Nox, noctis, f. *the night*.

Os, ossis, n. *a bone*.

Quiris, -itis, *a Roman*.

Samnis, -itis, m. or f. *a Samnite*.

Uter, utris, m. *a bottle*.

Thus *Samnitium*, *lintrium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*; as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *beffium*. *Bos*, an ox or cow, has *boum*, and in the dative, *bōbus*, or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*. But those which have *a* or *sis* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *ōn*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammātum*, or *epigrammatōn*, an epigram; *metamorphosis*, *-ium*, or *-eōn*.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *manes*, m. souls departed, *manium*; *cælites*, m. inhabitants of heaven, *cælitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* and *cæles*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnalia*, the feast of Saturn, *Saturnaliūm*, and *Saturnaliorum*.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*; as, *nocentūm* for *nocentium*: and sometimes to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *cælituum* for *cælitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncōpe*; and the latter by *Epenthēsis*.

*Note.* The genitive plural is also contracted in the other

\* Donat *ium* Samnis, linter, caro, dos, & os, ossis, Glis, nix, noxque cohors, mus, faux, uter: adde Quiritem, Atque larem, litem, cotem, cor; compositumque, Uncia quod simul as genuit: monosyllaba junge Consona quæ duplex claudit. Bos ritè boum dat.



declensions ; as, *deûm*, for *deorum* ; *cælicölûm*, for *cælicö-larum* ; *currûm*, for *curruum*.

DATIVE PLURAL.

The dative plural ends in *ibus* ; as, *ser-mōnibus*.

Except. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus* ; as *poēma*, a poem, *poemātis*, rather than *poema-tibus*, from the old nominative *poemätum*.

Except. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin* ; as, *Troäsi* or *Troäsin*, for *Troadibus*, from *Troas*, *Troädis*, a Trojan woman.

ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

The accusative plural is the same with the nominative ; as, *sermōnes*.

Except. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plu-rul, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is* ; as, *par-tes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Except. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accu-sative plural also ends in *as* ; as, *lampas*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda* ; *lampādes* or *lampādas*.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

The fourth declension is known by the ge-nitive singular in *ûs*, and the dative in *ui*.

It has two terminations, *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine : nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular num-ber ; as,

Fructus, fruit, masc.		Cornu, a horn, neut.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. fructus,	N. fructus,	N. cornu,	N. cornua,
G. fructûs,	G. fructuum,	G. cornu,	G. cornuum,
D. fructui,	D. fructibus,	D. cornu,	D. cornibus,
A. fructum,	A. fructus,	A. cornu,	A. cornua,
V. fructus,	V. fructus,	V. cornu,	V. cornua,
A. fructu.	A. fructibus.	A. cornu.	A. cornibus.



In like manner decline,

Anus, f. <i>an old woman.</i>	Cursus, <i>a course.</i>	Ritus, <i>a rite.</i>
Casus, <i>a fall.</i>	Gradus, <i>a step.</i>	Ructus, <i>a belching.</i>
Cæstus, <i>a gauntlet.</i>	Ictus, <i>a stroke.</i>	Sexus, <i>a sex.</i>
Cætus, <i>an assembly.</i>	Luxus, <i>luxury.</i>	Sinus, <i>a bosom.</i>
Cestus, <i>a marriage-girdle.</i>	Metus, <i>fear.</i>	Tumultus, <i>a tumult.</i>
	Nurus, f. <i>a daughter-in-law.</i>	Vultus, <i>the countenance.</i>

The terminations of this declension are ; nom. sing. *us* ; gen. *ūs* ; dat. *ui* ; acc. *um* ; voc. *like the nom.* ; nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua* ; gen. *uum* ; dat. and abl. *ibus*.

Except. 1\*. The following nouns are feminine :

Acus, <i>a needle.</i>	Manus, <i>the hand.</i>	Specus, <i>a den.</i>
Domus, <i>a house.</i>	Penus, <i>a storehouse.</i>	Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>
Ficus, <i>a fig.</i>	Porticus, <i>a gallery.</i>	

*Penus* and *specus* are sometimes masculine. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension : *domus* is but partly so, thus,

*Domus, a house, fem.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. domus,	Nom. domus,
Gen. domūs, or -mi,	Gen. domorum, or -uum,
Dat. domui, or -mo,	Dat. domibus,
Acc. domum,	Acc. domos, or -us,
Voc. domus,	Voc. domus,
Abl. domo.	Abl. domibus.

Note. *Domūs*, in the genit. signifies, of a house ; and *domi*, at home.

Except. 2†. The following have *ibus* in the dative and ablative plural.

Acus, <i>a needle.</i>	Lacus, <i>a lake.</i>	Specus, <i>a den.</i>
Arcus, <i>a bow.</i>	Partus, <i>a birth.</i>	Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>
Artus, <i>a joint.</i>	Portus, <i>a harbour.</i>	Veru, <i>a spit.</i>
Genu, <i>the knee.</i>		

*Portus*, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ibus* ; as, *portibus* or *portūbus*.

Except. 3. *Iesus*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

\* Hæc domus & vannus, pro fructu ficus, & alvus ;  
Sic humus atque manus, poscunt : acus addito quartæ ;  
Porticus atque tribus. Capit hoc virus pelagusque.

† Partus, ubus, specus, artus, acus, dant, & lacus, arcus,  
Atque tribus : sed utrumque genu, portusque veruque.



Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructue*; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructuibus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; and in others, the dative in *u*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

The fifth declension is known by the genitive and dative singular in *ei*.

All the nouns of this declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender; as,

*Res*, a thing, fem.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Terminations.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>res</i> ,	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>res</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēi</i> ,	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rērum</i> ,	<i>ei</i> ,	<i>erum</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēi</i> ,	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēbus</i> ,	<i>ei</i> ,	<i>ebus</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rem</i> ,	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>res</i> ,	<i>em</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>res</i> ,	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>res</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>re</i> .	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēbus</i> .	<i>e</i> .	<i>ebus</i> .

In like manner decline,

<i>Acies</i> , the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.	<i>Caries</i> , rottenness.	<i>Pernicies</i> , destruction.
	<i>Facies</i> , the face.	<i>Rabies</i> , rage.
	<i>Glacies</i> , ice.	<i>Sanies</i> , gore.

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three, *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing: and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four, *abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *paries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.



## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

## I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable, either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes :

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural :*

Avernus, a lake in Campania, bell.

Dindymus, a hill in Phrygia.

Ismarus, a hill in Thrace.

Marsicus, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.

Mænalus, a hill in Arcadia.

Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.

Tænarus, a promontory in Laconia.

Tartarus, hell.

Tægætus, a hill in Laconia.

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernorum*; *Dindyma*, *-orum*, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *juga* or *cacumina* in the plural.

2. *Masculine in the singular, and in the plural masculine and neuter :*

*Focus*, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*.

When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural :*

*Carbasus*, a sail, pl. *carbasa*; *Pergamus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural :*

*Cælum*, pl. *cæli*, heaven; *Elysium*, pl. *Elysi*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the singular, in the plural masculine or neuter :*

*Rastrum*, a rake, pl. *rastri* and *rastra*; *frenum*, a bridle, pl. *freni* and *frena*.

6. *Neuter*



6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural :*

*Delicium*, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *Epulum*, a banquet, pl. *epulæ*. *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*; as, *vas*, *vāsi*, a vessel, plur. *vasa*, *vasorum*; *jugerum*, *jugeri*, an acre, plur. *jugera*, *jugerum*, *jugeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jugeris* and *jugere* in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus* or *juger*.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nefas*, wrong; *sināpi*, mustard; *mane*, the morning; *cepe*, an onion; *gausape*, a rough coat, &c.; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination. *Pers.* *Istud cras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow. *Mart.* *O magnum Græcorum*, the *Omēga*, or the large O of the Greeks; *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus*; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin; as, *Job*, *Elizabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *monoptōta*; as, *inquies*, want of rest, in the nominative singular; *dicis* and *nauci*, in the genit. sing.; thus, *dicis gratia*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *inficias* and *incita* or *incitas*, in the acc. plur.; thus, *ire inficias*, to deny; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to a strait, or non-plus; *ingratiis*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one; and these ablatives singular, *noctu*, in the night time; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day-time; *promptu*, in readiness; *natu*, by birth; *injussu*, without command or leave, &c.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called *diptōta*; as, *necesse* or *-um*, necessity; *volupe* or *volup*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness; *astu*, a town; *hir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. sing.; *vesper*, m. abl. *vespere* or *vesperi*, the evening; *spontis*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord: so *impetis*, m. and *impete*, force; *verbēris*, n. genit. and *verbere*, abl.



a stripe ; in the plural entire, *verbēra, verberum, verberibus, &c. repetundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion ; *suppetiæ*, nom. pl. *suppetias* in the acc. help ; *inferiæ, inferias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta* ; as, *prēci, precem, prece*. f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used : in the plural it is entire, *preces, precum, precibus, &c. Dica*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas* ; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantidem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative ; as, *hiems, rus, thus, metus, mel, far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuters, *melos*, a song ; *epos*, a heroic poem ; *caccēthes*, an evil custom ; *cete*, whales, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc ; also *grates*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetrap-tōta* : *vicis*, f. of the place or stead of another ; *pecūdis*, f. of a beast ; *sordis*, f. of filth ; *ditionis*, f. of dominion, power ; *opis*, f. of help. Of these *pecūdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire : *ditionis* wants it altogether : *vicis* is not used in the genitive plural ; *opes* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter ; *daps*, a dish of meat ; and *frux*, corn ; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentaptōta* : thus, *os*, the mouth ; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely ; dat. sing. *chao*.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c. as, *justitia*, justice ; *ambitus*, ambition ; *astus*, cunning ; *musica*, music ; *api-um*, parsley ; *argentum*, silver ; *aurum*, gold ; *lac*, milk ; *triticum*, wheat ; *hordeum*, barley ; *avēna*, oats ; *juventus*, youth,



youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural :

Aër, aëris, *the air.*

Æther, -ëris, *the sky.*

Fimus, -i, *dung.*

Hespërus, -i, *the evening star.*

Limus, -i, *slime,*

Meridies, -iëi, *mid-day.*

Muscus, -i, *mos.*

Nemo, -inis, *no body.*

Penus, -i, or -ûs, *all manner of provisions.*

Pontus, -i, *the sea.*

Pulvis, -ëris, *dust.*

Sanguis, -inis, *blood.*

Sopor, -ôris, *sleep.*

Viscus, -i, *bird-lime.*

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural :

Argilla, -æ, *potter's earth.*

Fama, -æ, *fame.*

Humus, -i, *the ground.*

Lues, -is, *a plague.*

Plebs, plëbis, *the common people.*

Pubes, -is, *the youth.*

Quies, -ëtis, *rest.*

Salus, -ûtis, *safety.*

Sitis, -is, *thirst.*

Supellex, -ëtis, *household-furniture.*

Tabes, -is, *a consumption.*

Tellus, -ûris, *the earth.*

Vespëra, -æ, *the evening.*

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural :

Album, -i, *a list of names.*

Diluculum, -i, *the dawning of day.*

Ebur, -ôris, *ivory.*

Gelu, *ind. frost.*

Hilum, -i, *the black speck of a bean, a trifle.*

Iustitium, -i, *a vacation of a court of justice.*

Lethum, *death.*

Lutum, -i, *clay.*

Nihil, nihîlum, or nil, *nothing.*

Pelagus, -i, *the sea.*

Penum, -i, and penus, -ôris, *all kind of provisions.*

Sal, sâlis, *salt.*

Senium, -ii, *old age.*

Ver, vëris, *the spring.*

Virus, -i, *poison.*

5. Many nouns want the singular. Such are the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities ; as,

Apollinâres, -ium, *games in honour of Apollo.*

Bacchanalia, -ium, *the feasts of Bacchus.*

Bucolica, -orum, *a book of pastorals.*

Olympia, -orum, *the Olympic games.*

Syracûsæ, -arum, *Syracuse.*

Hierosolÿma, -orum, *Jerusalem ; or Hierosolyma, -æ, of the first destruction.*

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

Cancelli, *lattices.*

Cani, *gray hairs.*

Codicilli, *writings.*

Fasti, -orum, or fastus, -uum, *calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.*

Fori,



Fori, *the hatches of a ship.*

Infēri, *the gods below.*

Liberi, *children,*

Postēri, *posterity.*

Supēri, *the gods above.*

Cassēs, -ium, *a hunter's net.*

Fasces, -ium, *a bundle of rods, carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.*

Fines, -ium, *the borders of a country, or a country.*

Furfūres, -um, *scales in the head.*

Lemūres, -um, *hobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.*

Majōres, -um, *ancestors.*

Minōres, -um, *successors.*

Natāles, -ium, *parentage.*

Procēres, -um, *the nobles.*

Pugillāres, -ium, *writing-tables.*

Sentes, -ium, *thorns.*

Veprēs, -ium, *briers.*

### 7. The following feminines want the singular number :

Alpes, ium, *the Alps.*

Angustiaē, *difficulties.*

Apinaē, *gerugas.*

Argutiaē, *quirks, wit-ticisms.*

Bigā, *a chariot drawn — by two horses.*

Trīgā, — *by three.*

Quadrīgā, — *by four.*

Braccā, *breeches.*

Branchiaē, *the gills of a fish.*

Cunā, *a cradle.*

Dirā, *imprecations.*

Divitiaē, *riches.*

Exsequiaē, *funerals.*

Exuviaē, *spoils.*

Excubiaē, *atches.*

Facetiaē, *pleasant say-ings.*

Feriaē, *holydays.*

Facultates, -ium, *one's goods and chattels.*

Gades, ium, *Cadiz.*

Gerrā, *trifles.*

Induviaē, *cloaths to put on.*

Insidiaē, *snares.*

Induciaē, *a truce.*

Kalendā, Nonā, Idus, -uum, *names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.*

Lapidinā, *stone-quarries.*

Literā, *an epistle.*

Lactēs, -ium, *the small guts.*

Manubiaē, *spoils taken in war.*

Minā, *threats.*

Minutiaē, *little niceties.*

Nugā, *trifles.*

Nundinā, *a market.*

Nuptiaē, *a marriage.*

Offuciaē, *cheats.*

Operā, *workmen.*

Parietinā, *ruinous walls.*

Phalēraē, *trappings.*

Primitiaē, *first fruits.*

Præstigiaē, *enchantments.*

Plagā, *nets.*

Pleiādes, -um, *the seven stars.*

Partes, -ium, *a party.*

Quisquiliaē, *sweepings.*

Reliquiaē, *a remainder.*

Salebraē, *rugged places.*

Salinā, *salt pits.*

Scalā, *a ladder.*

Scatebraē, *a spring.*

Scopā, *a besom.*

Tenebraē, *darkness.*

Thermaē, *hot baths.*

Thermopylā, *straits of mount Oeta.*

Tricā, *toys.*

Valvā, *folding doors.*

Vindiciaē, *a claim of liberty.*

### 8. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

Acta, *public acts or records.*

Arma, *arms.*

Bona, *goods.*

Brevia, -ium, *shelves.*

Castra, *a camp.*

Hyberna, sc, castra, *winter-quarters.*

Æstiva, *summer-quarters.*

Stativa, *a standing camp.*

Comitia, *an assembly of the people.*

Crepundia, *children's bawbles,*

Extā, *the entrails.*

Flabra, *blasts of wind.*

Fraga, *strawberries.*

Ilia, -ium, *the entrails.*

Incunabula, *a cradle.*

Iusta, *funeral rites.*

Lamenta, *lamentations.*

Lautia, *provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.*

Lustra, *dens of wild beasts.*

Magalia, -ium, *cottages.*

Munia,



Munia, *offices*.  
 Mœnia, -ium, *the walls of a city*.  
 Parapherna, *all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry*.  
 Præcordia, *the bowels*.  
 Principia, *the place in the camp where the general's tent stood*.

Rostra, *a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people*.  
 Scruta, *old cloaths*.  
 Sponsalia, -ium, *espousals*.  
 Tesqua, *rough places*.  
 Transtra, *the seats where the rowers sit in ships*.

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *litera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

### III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbos* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri*, and *laurûs*, a laurel tree, *sequester*, -tri, or -tris, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *materia*, -æ; or, *materies*, -iēi, matter; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or *plebes*, -is, -ēi, or contracted *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tonitrus*, -ûs, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *penus*, -i, and -ûs, m. or f. or *penus*, -ōris, neut. all kind of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *æther*, -ēris, masc. and *æthra*, -æ, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is, or -īdis, a tyger: to which may be added, nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, -æ; or *Fidenæ*, -arum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those, which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, -æ; and *mendum*, -i, a fault; *cassis*, -īdis; and *cassida*, -dæ, a helmet. — So,

Baculus, & -um, *a staff*.  
 Balteus, & -um, *a belt*.  
 Batillus, & -um, *a fire-shovel*.  
 Capulus, & -um, *a bilt*.  
 Capus, & -o, *a capon*.  
 Crocus, & -um, *saffron*.  
 Cubitus, & -um, *a cubit*.  
 Elephantus, & -as, -antis, *an elephant*.

Efsēda, & -um, *a chariot*.  
 Galērus, & -um, *a bat*.  
 Glutinum, & -en, *glue*.  
 Maceria, & -es, -ēi, *a wall*.  
 Muria, & -es, -ēi, *brine or pickle*.  
 Nasus, & -um, *the nose*.  
 Oestrus, & -um, *a gad-bee*.  
 Ostrea, & -um, *an oyster*.  
 Rapa, & -um, *a turnip*.



Ruma, & -men, *the cud.*

Rufcus, & -um, *a brush.*

Seps, & -es, *f. an hedge.*

Tignus, & -um, *a plank.*

Viscus, & -um, *bird-lime.*

Veternus, & -um, *a lethargy.*

*Note.* The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant: thus, *vasa, -orum*, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

### *Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.*

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *populus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priamides*, the son of Priamus; *Æetias*, the daughter of Æetes; *Nerine*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æacides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of Æacus; *Romulidæ*, the Romans, from their first king Romulus. Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*.

Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamides*, -*dæ*, &c. pl. -*dæ*, *darum*, &c.; *Nerine*, -*es*; *Tyndaris*, -*idis*, or -*idos*; *Æetias*, -*adis*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, -*adis*, a woman born at Troy; *Siculus*, -*i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicelis*, -*idis*, a Sicilian woman: so, *Macædo*, -*onis*; *Arpinas*, -*atis*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract*; as, *bonitas*,



*bonitas*, goodness ; *dulcēdo*, sweetness : from *bonus*, good ; *dulcis*, sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes* ; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive* ; as, *libellus*, a little book ; *chartūla*, a little paper ; *opusculum*, a little work : from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum* ; and are generally of the same gender with their primitives.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal* noun ; as, *amor*, love ; *doctrīna*, learning : from *amo* and *doceo*.

## A D J E C T I V E.

An adjective is a word added to a substantive, to express its quality.

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

An adjective may be thus distinguished from a substantive : If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make sense ; but if it be joined to a substantive, it will make nonsense : thus we can say, “a good thing ;” but we cannot say, “a book thing.”

Adjectives in English admit of no variation, except that of the degrees of comparison.

## L A T I N A D J E C T I V E S.

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases ; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive, with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension,



## 52 ADJECTIVES of the First and Second Declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension ; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Except. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension,

Acer, <i>sharp.</i>	Campester, <i>belonging to a plain.</i>	Sylvester, <i>woody.</i>
Alacer, <i>cheerful.</i>	Equester, <i>belonging to a horse.</i>	Pedester, <i>on foot.</i>
Celer, <i>swift.</i>	Saluber, <i>wholesome.</i>	Paluster, <i>marshy.</i>
Celeber, <i>famous.</i>		Volucer, <i>swift.</i>

## ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um* ; as,

*bonus*, for the masc. *bona*, for the fem. *bonum*, for the neut. good.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>N.</i>	<i>bon-us,</i>	<i>-a, -um,</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>bon-i,</i>	<i>-æ, -a,</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>bon-i,</i>	<i>-æ, -i,</i>	<i>G.</i>	<i>bon-orum,</i>	<i>-arum, -orum,</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>bon-o,</i>	<i>-æ, -o,</i>	<i>D.</i>	<i>bon-is,</i>	<i>-is, -is,</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>bon-um,</i>	<i>-am, -um,</i>	<i>A.</i>	<i>bon-os,</i>	<i>-as, -a,</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>bon-e,</i>	<i>-a, -um,</i>	<i>V.</i>	<i>bon-i,</i>	<i>-æ, -a,</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>bon-o,</i>	<i>-â, -o.</i>	<i>A.</i>	<i>bon-is,</i>	<i>-is, -is.</i>

In like manner decline,

Æmulus, <i>vying with.</i>	Assus, <i>roasted.</i>	Carus, <i>dear.</i>
Æquus, <i>just.</i>	Austerus, <i>harsh.</i>	Cavus, <i>hollow.</i>
Albus, <i>white.</i>	Balbus, <i>stammering.</i>	Canus, <i>hoary.</i>
Altus, <i>high.</i>	Barbarus, <i>savage.</i>	Cassus, <i>void.</i>
Amarus, <i>bitter.</i>	Bellus, <i>pretty.</i>	Castus, <i>chaste.</i>
Amœnus, <i>pleasant.</i>	Blæsus, <i>lisping.</i>	Cellus, <i>high.</i>
Amplus, <i>large.</i>	Blandus, <i>flattering.</i>	Clarus, <i>famous.</i>
Apricus, <i>sunny.</i>	Brutus, <i>brutish.</i>	Claudus, <i>lame.</i>
Arctus, <i>strait.</i>	Cæcus, <i>blind.</i>	Coruscus, <i>glittering.</i>
Arduus, <i>high.</i>	Calvus, <i>bald.</i>	Crassus, <i>thick.</i>
		Creperus,



Crep̃erus, <i>doubtful.</i>	Lexus, <i>loose.</i>	Rarus, <i>rare.</i>
Crispus, <i>curled.</i>	Lentus, <i>slow.</i>	Reus, <i>impeached.</i>
Crudus, <i>rare.</i>	Limp̃idus, <i>clear.</i>	Rufus, <i>reddish.</i>
Cunctus, <i>all.</i>	Limus, <i>awry.</i>	Rufus, <i>of a flesh colour.</i>
Curtus, <i>short.</i>	Lippus, <i>blear-eyed.</i>	Rutilus, <i>ruddy.</i>
Curvus, <i>crooked.</i>	Longus, <i>long.</i>	Sævus, <i>cruel.</i>
Densus, <i>thick.</i>	Lubricus, <i>slippery.</i>	Sagus, <i>knowing.</i>
Dignus, <i>worthy.</i>	Luridus, <i>pale.</i>	Sanus, <i>sound.</i>
Dirus, <i>direful.</i>	Luscus, <i>blind of one eye.</i>	Saucius, <i>wounded.</i>
Dubius, <i>doubtful.</i>	Mancus, <i>lame.</i>	Scævus, <i>left.</i>
Durus, <i>hard.</i>	Manifestus, <i>evident.</i>	Scambus, <i>bow-legged.</i>
Ebrius, <i>drunk.</i>	Medius, <i>middle.</i>	Sedulus, <i>careful.</i>
Elixus, <i>boiled.</i>	Mendicus, <i>beggar-like.</i>	Serēnus, <i>clear.</i>
Exiguus, <i>small.</i>	Merus, <i>pure.</i>	Serius, <i>earnest.</i>
Facetus, <i>witty.</i>	Mirus, <i>wonderful.</i>	Serus, <i>late.</i>
Facundus, <i>eloquent.</i>	Mundus, <i>neat.</i>	Severus, <i>severe.</i>
Fatuus, <i>foolish.</i>	Mutilus, <i>maimed.</i>	Siccus, <i>dry.</i>
Faustus, <i>lucky.</i>	Mutus, <i>dumb.</i>	Simus, <i>flat-nosed.</i>
Fessus, <i>weary.</i>	Mutuus, <i>borrowed.</i>	Sincerus, <i>sincere.</i>
Festus, <i>festival.</i>	Nimius, <i>too much.</i>	Sobrius, <i>sober.</i>
Firmus, <i>firm.</i>	Nudus, <i>naked.</i>	Socius, <i>in alliance.</i>
Flaccus, <i>flap-eared.</i>	Obesus, <i>fat, dull.</i>	Solidus, <i>solid.</i>
Flavus, <i>yellow.</i>	Obscurus, <i>dark.</i>	Spissus, <i>thick.</i>
Fædus, <i>ugly.</i>	Opacus, <i>dark.</i>	Spurcus, <i>dirty.</i>
Fretus, <i>trusting.</i>	Opimus, <i>rich.</i>	Spurius, <i>counterfeit.</i>
Frivölus, <i>trifling.</i>	Orbus, <i>destitute.</i>	Stolidus, <i>foolish.</i>
Fulvus, <i>yellow.</i>	Pætus, <i>pink-eyed.</i>	Strenuus, <i>active.</i>
Furvus, <i>swarthy.</i>	Paulus, <i>little.</i>	Stultus, <i>foolish.</i>
Fuscus, <i>brown.</i>	Pauci, <i>pl. few.</i>	Sudus, <i>fair, without clouds.</i>
Geminus, <i>double.</i>	Pius, <i>pious.</i>	Superbus, <i>proud.</i>
Gibbus, <i>convex.</i>	Planus, <i>plain.</i>	Supinus, <i>lying on the back.</i>
Gilvus, <i>of a flesh colour.</i>	Plenus, <i>full.</i>	Surdus, <i>deaf.</i>
Glaucus, <i>grey.</i>	Plerique, æque, aque, <i>the most part; sing. plerique.</i>	Tantus, <i>so great.</i>
Gnarus, <i>skillful.</i>	Prævus, <i>wicked.</i>	Tardus, <i>slow.</i>
Gnavus, <i>active.</i>	Privus, <i>single, peculiar.</i>	Torvus, <i>stern.</i>
Gratus, <i>grateful.</i>	Probus, <i>good.</i>	Tranquillus, <i>calm.</i>
Hirsutus, <i>rough.</i>	Procerus, <i>high.</i>	Trepidus, <i>fearful.</i>
Hispidus, <i>rugged.</i>	Prop̃erus, <i>hasty.</i>	Udus, <i>moist.</i>
Idoneus, <i>fit.</i>	Proprius, <i>proper.</i>	Uncus, <i>crooked.</i>
Jejunus, <i>fasting.</i>	Pronus, <i>prone.</i>	Valgus, <i>bow-legged.</i>
Invitus, <i>unwilling.</i>	Publicus, <i>public.</i>	Vanus, <i>vain.</i>
Jucundus, <i>pleasant.</i>	Pullus, <i>broken.</i>	Varius, <i>various.</i>
Lætus, <i>joyful.</i>	Purus, <i>pure.</i>	Varus, <i>bandy-legged.</i>
Lævus, <i>on the left hand.</i>	Putus, <i>without mixture.</i>	Vastus, <i>huge.</i>
Largus, <i>large.</i>	Quantus, <i>how great.</i>	Verus, <i>true.</i>
Lascivus, <i>wanton.</i>	Rancidus, <i>rank, stale.</i>	Vegētus, <i>vigorous.</i>
Lassus, <i>weary.</i>	Raucus, <i>hoarse.</i>	Viduus, <i>deprived.</i>
Latus, <i>broad.</i>		



## 54 ADJECTIVES of the First and Second Declension.

Tener, tenēra, tenērum, *tender*.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>N.</i> ten-er,	-ēra,	-ērum,	<i>N.</i> ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēra,
<i>G.</i> ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēri,	<i>G.</i> ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
<i>D.</i> ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	<i>D.</i> ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
<i>A.</i> ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	<i>A.</i> ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
<i>V.</i> ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	<i>V.</i> ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
<i>A.</i> ten-ero,	-erâ,	-ero.	<i>A.</i> ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

In like manner decline,

Asper, <i>rough</i> .	Lacer, <i>torn</i> .	Miser, <i>wretched</i> .
Ceter, ( <i>hardly used</i> ) <i>the rest</i> .	Liber, <i>free</i> .	Prosper, <i>prosperous</i> .

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *laniger*, bearing wool; *opifer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *satur*, *satūra*, *satūrum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *ater*, *atra*, *atrum*, black. — So,

Æger, <i>sick</i> .	Niger, <i>black</i> .	Sacer, <i>sacred</i> .
Creber, <i>frequent</i> .	Piger, <i>slow</i> .	Teter, <i>ugly</i> .
Glaber, <i>smooth</i> .	Pulcher, <i>fair</i> .	Vafer, <i>crafty</i> .
Intēger, <i>entire</i> .	Ruber, <i>red</i> .	

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders; in the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

Unus, -a, -um; <i>gen. unius, dat. uni, one</i> .	Alter, alterius, <i>one of two, the other</i> .
Alius, -ius, <i>one of many, another</i> .	Neuter, -trius, <i>neither</i> .
Nullus, nullius, <i>none</i> .	Uter, utrius, <i>whether of the two</i> .
Solus, -ius, <i>alone</i> .	Uterque, utriusque, <i>both</i> .
Totus, -ius, <i>whole</i> .	Uterlibet, -triuslibet, <i>which of the two you please</i> .
Ullus, -ius, <i>any</i> .	Utervis, -triusvis, <i>which of the two you please</i> .

Alterūter, *the one or the other*, alterutrius, or sometimes alterius utrius.

These adjectives, except *totus*, are called *Partitives*; and seem to resemble in their signification, as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedile*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is



is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say, *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *fœmina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

ADJECTIVES of the THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as, *felix*, for the masc. *felix*, for the fem. *felix*, for the neut. happy; thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	N. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis,	-icis,	G. fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	D. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	A. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	V. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A. fel-ice, or -ici,	Ec.		A. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

In like manner decline,

Atrox, *cruel*.  
Cieur, *tame*.  
Clemens, *merciful*.  
Elegans, *handsome*.  
Frequens, *frequent*.  
Ingens, *huge*.

Pernix, *swift*.  
Prudens, *prudent*.  
Recens, *fresh*.  
Repens, *sudden*.  
Sagax, *sagacious*.

Salax, *lustful*.  
Sons, *guilty*.  
Trux, *cruel*.  
Velox, *swift*.  
Vehemens, *vehement*.

2. Adjectives of two terminations; as, *mitis*, for the masc. and fem. *mite*, for the neut. meek; so *mitior*, *mitior*, *mitius*, meeker; thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
N. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	N. mites,	mites,	mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	G. mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
D. miti,	miti,	miti,	D. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
A. mitem,	mitem,	mite,	A. mites,	mites,	mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	V. mites,	mites,	mitia,
A. miti,	miti,	miti.	A. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

In like manner decline,

Brevis, *short*.  
Comis, *gentle*.  
Debilis, *weak*.  
Dulcis, *sweet*.  
Exilis, *slender*.  
Fortis, *brave*.

Grandis, *great*.  
Gravis, *heavy*.  
Hilaris, *cheerful*.  
Inanis, *empty*.  
Lævis, *smooth*.  
Lenis, *gentle*.

Levis, *light*.  
Mollis, *soft*.  
Omnis, *all*.  
Putris, *rotten*.  
Pinguis, *fat*.

Qualis,



Qualis, <i>of what kind.</i>	Sublīmis, <i>lofty.</i>	Turpis, <i>base.</i>
Rudis, <i>rare.</i>	Subtīlis, <i>subtile, fine.</i>	Vilis, <i>worthless.</i>
Segnis, <i>slow.</i>	Talis, <i>such.</i>	Vitīlis, <i>pliant.</i>
Sterilis, <i>barren.</i>	Tenuis, <i>small.</i>	Utilis, <i>useful.</i>
Suavis, <i>sweet.</i>	Tristis, <i>sad.</i>	

## Sing.

## Plur.

N. miti-or, -or, -us,	N. miti-ōres, -ōres, -ōra,
G. miti-ōris, -ōris, -ōris,	G. miti-orum, -orum, -orum,
D. miti-ori, -ori, -ori,	D. miti-oribus, -oribus, -oribus,
A. miti-orem, -orem, -us,	A. miti-ores, -ores, -ora,
V. miti-or, -or, -us,	V. miti-ores, -ores, -ora,
A. miti-ore, or-ori, &c.	A. miti-oribus, -oribus, -oribus.

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations ; as, *acer*, or *acris*, for the masc. *acris*, for the fem. *acre*, for the neut. sharp ; thus,

## Sing.

## Plur.

N. a-cer or -cris, -cris, -cre,	N. a-cres, -cres, -cria,
G. a-cris, -cris, -cris,	G. a-crium, -crium, -crium,
D. a-cri, -cri, -cri,	D. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus,
A. a-crem, -crem, -cre,	A. a-cres, -cres, -cria,
V. a-cer or -cris, -cris, -cre,	V. a-cres, -cres, -cria,
A. a-cri, -cri, -cri.	A. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus.

In like manner, *alācer*, *celer*, *celēber*, *salūber*, *volūcer*, &c.

## R U L E S.

1\*. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular : but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia* : except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

\* Adjectiva petunt *e* vel *i* sibi nomina sexto.

Quòd si se neutrum per *e* terminat, *i* modò poscunt :

Queis *e* tamen vatum quandoque licentia donat.

*I* quoque *par* simplex tantùm tenet & memor. *Hospes*,

*Pauper* item, *sospes*, *pubes*, nil præter *e* formant.

Vix dabit *i* *cælebs*, *dives*, *potis* orta, *superstes* :

Adjice quæ *corpus*, quæ *pes* genuere colorque.



## . EXCEPTIONS.

Except. 1. *Dives*, *hospes*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *juvĕnis*, *senex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Except. 2. *Compos*, *impos*, *consors*, *inops*, *vigil*, *supplex*, *uber*, *degener*, *puber*, and *celer*; also compounds ending in *ceps*, *fex*, *pes*, and *corpor*; as, *princeps*, *artifex*, *bipes*, *bicorpor*, have *e* in the abl. sing. and *um*, not *ium*, in the genit. pl. All these have seldom the neut. sing. and almost never the neut. plur. in the nominative and accusative. To which add *memor*, which has *memōri*, and *memōrum*: also *deses*, *reses*, *hebes*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *teres*, *concolor*, *versicolor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Except. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pāri*: but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as, *compāre*, or *-ri*. *Vetus* hath *vetĕra*, and *vetĕrum*: *plus*, which is only used in the neut. sing. has *plure*; and in the plural, *plures*, *plura*, or *pluria*, *plurium*.

Except. 4. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *potis*, *e*, able, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

## REMARKS.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victrīci ferro*, not *victrīce*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *vic̃tor*, victorious, for the masc. *vic̃trix*, for the fem. *Vic̃trix*, in the plur. has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *vic̃trīces*, *vic̃tricia*: so *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Vic̃trix* is also neut. in the sing.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jūgum*, *limus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declīvis*, *-is*, *-e*; and *declīvus*, *-a*, *-um*, steep; *imbecillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis* and *semisomnus*, half-asleep; *exanimis* and *exanimus*,



*nīmus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnanimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrēnus*, *levissomnus*; not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillanimis*, *injūgis*, *illīmis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pusillanimus*, &c. So, *semianimis*, *inermis*, *sublīmis*, *acclīvis*, *declīvis*, *proclīvis*; rarely *semianimus*, &c.

5. An adjective derived from a substantive or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive Adjective*; as, *Scotīcus*, *paternus*, *herīlis*, *aliēnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another: from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

6. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amabilis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *volūcer*, swift: from *amo*, *capio*, *volo*.

### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives, which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are:

Unus,	one.	Triginta,	thirty.
Duo,	two.	Quadraginta,	forty.
Tres,	three.	Quinquaginta,	fifty.
Quatuor,	four.	Sexaginta,	sixty.
Quinque,	five.	Septuaginta,	seventy.
Sex,	six.	Octoginta,	eighty.
Septem,	seven.	Nonaginta,	ninety.
Octo,	eight.	Centum,	a hundred.
Novem,	nine.	Ducenti,	two hundred.
Dēcem,	ten.	Trecenti,	three hundred.
Undēcim,	eleven.	Quadringenti,	four hundred.
Duodecim,	twelve.	Quingenti,	five hundred.
Tredecim,	thirteen.	Sexcenti,	six hundred.
Quatuordecim,	fourteen.	Septingenti,	seven hundred.
Quindecim,	fifteen.	Octingenti,	eight hundred.
Sexdecim,	sixteen.	Nongenti,	nine hundred.
Septendecim,	seventeen.	Mille,	a thousand.
Octodecim,	eighteen.	Duo millia, or	} two thousand.
Novemdecim,	nineteen.	bis mille,	
Viginti,	twenty.	Decem millia, or	} ten thousand.
Viginti unus, or	} twenty-one.	decies mille,	
Unus & Viginti,		Viginti millia, or	} twenty thousand.
Viginti duo, or	} twenty-two.	vicies mille,	
Duo & Viginti,			



The Cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille* want the singular.

*Unus* is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *una mœnia*, one wall: or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of cloaths.

*Duo* and *tres* are thus declined:

<i>Plur.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
<i>N.</i> duo,	duæ,	duo,	<i>N.</i> tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>G.</i> duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	<i>G.</i> trium,	trium,	trium,
<i>D.</i> duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	<i>D.</i> tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
<i>A.</i> duos or duo,	duas,	duo,	<i>A.</i> tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>V.</i> duo,	duæ,	duo,	<i>V.</i> tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>A.</i> duobus,	duabus,	duobus.	<i>A.</i> tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the Cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, *-tæ*, *-ta*; *ducentorum*, *-tarum*, *-torum*, &c.

*Mille* is used either as a substantive or adjective: when taken substantively it is indeclinable in the singular number: In the plural it has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c.

*Mille*, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable.

2. The Ordinal numbers are, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.

3. The Distributive are, *singuli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1 Primus, a, um.	Singuli, æ. a.	Semel, once.
2 secundus.	bini.	bis, twice.
3 tertius.	terni.	ter, thrice.
4 quartus.	quaterni.	quater, four times.
5 quintus.	quini.	quinquies. &c.
6 sextus.	seni.	sexies.
7 septimus.	septēni.	septies.
8 octavus.	octōni.	octies.
9 nonus.	novēni.	novies.
10 decimus.	deni.	decies.

*Ordinal*



	<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
11	undecimus.	undēni.	undecies.
12	duodecimus.	duodēni.	duodecies.
13	decimus tertius.	tredeni, terni deni.	tredecies.
14	decimus quartus.	quaterni deni.	quatuordecies.
15	decimus quintus.	quindenī.	quindecies.
16	decimus sextus.	seni deni.	sexdecies.
17	decimus septimus.	septeni deni.	decies ac septies.
18	decimus octavus.	octoni deni.	decies ac octies.
19	decimus nonus.	noveni deni.	decies et novies.
20	vigésimus, vicesimus.	viceni.	vicies.
21	vigésimus primus.	viceni singuli.	vicies semel.
30	trigésimus, tricesimus.	triceni.	trices.
40	quadragésimus.	quadragenī.	quadragies.
50	quingagesimus.	quingagenī.	quingagies.
60	sexagesimus.	sexagenī.	sexagies.
70	septuagesimus.	septuagenī.	septuagies.
80	octogésimus.	octogenī.	octogies.
90	nonagesimus.	nonagenī.	nonagies.
100	centésimus.	centeni.	centies.
200	ducentésimus.	ducenti.	ducenties.
300	trecentésimus.	trecenteni.	trecenties.
400	quadringentesimus.	quatercenteni.	quadringenties.
500	quingentesimus.	quinquies centeni.	quingenties.
600	sexcentésimus.	sexies centeni.	sexcenties.
700	septingentesimus.	septies centeni.	septingenties.
800	octingentesimus.	octies centeni.	octingenties.
900	nongentesimus.	novies centeni.	noningenties.
1000	millesimus.	milleni.	millies.
2000	bis millesimus.	bis milleni.	bis millies.

4. The Multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, -īcis, &c.

The interrogative words, to which the above numerals answer, are, *quot*, *quotus*, *quotēni*, *quoties*, and *quotūplex*.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bipartitus*, *tripartitus*, &c. *duplus*, *triplus*, &c. *bimus*, *trimus*, &c. *biennis*, *triennis*, &c. *bimestris*, *trimestris*, &c. *binarius*, *ternarius*, &c. *bilibris*, *trilibris*, &c.

## COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as,  
*hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

Those



Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are reckoned three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as, *durus*, hard: and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as, *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger*, *wiser*.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *strongest*, *wisest*.

### Comparison of ENGLISH Adjectives.

In English the comparative is formed from the positive, by adding to the end of the word *r* or *er*; and the superlative, by adding *st* or *est*; as, *wise*, *wiser*, *wisest*; *cold*, *colder*, *coldest*. The adverbs *more* and *most*, put before the adjective, have the same effect; as, *brave*, *more brave*, *most brave*.

Monosyllables for the most part are compared by *er* and *est*; and polysyllables, by *more* and *most*.

In some few adjectives, the superlative is formed by adding *most*; as, *undermost*, *uttermost*, or *utmost*, *uppermost*, *neithermost*.

### Comparison of LATIN Adjectives.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us*, for the neuter: The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *issimus*; as,

*Altus*, high, genit. *alti*; Comparative, *altior*, for the masc. *altior*, for the fem. *altius*, for the neut. higher:

F

Superlative,



Superlative, *altissimus*, -a, -um, highest. So *mitis*, meek; dat. *miti*: *mitior*, -or, -us, meeker; *mitissimus*, -a, -um, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*; as, *pauper*, poor, *pauperrimus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension: The superlative of the first and second.

### *Irregular and Defective Comparison.*

I. Bonus,	melior,	optimus,	good,	better,	best.
Malus,	pejor,	peissimus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maximus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	small,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plurimus,	much,	more,	most.
Fem. Multa, plurima; neut. multum, plus, plurimum; plur. Multi, plures, plurimi, &c.					

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse: in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magnissimus*; *most*, for *morest*; *least*, for *lessest*; *worst*, for *worsest*.

2. These five have their superlative in *rimus*:

Facilis, facilior, facillimus, <i>easy</i> .	Imbecillis, imbecillior, imbecillimus, <i>weak</i> .
Gracilis, gracilior, gracillimus, <i>lean</i> .	Similis, similior, simillimus, <i>like</i> .
Humilis, humilior, humillimus, <i>low</i> .	

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently:

Citer, citerior, citimus, <i>near</i> .	Intērus, interior, intīmus, <i>inward</i> .
Dexter, dexterior, dextimus, <i>right</i> .	Matūrus, -ior, maturrimus, or maturissimus, <i>ripe</i> .
Sinister, sinisterior, finistimus, <i>left</i> .	Postērus, posterior, postremus, <i>behind</i> .
Exter, -erior, extimus, or extrēmus, <i>outward</i> .	Supērus, -rior, suprēmus, or summus, <i>high</i> .
Infērus, -ior, infīmus, or imus, <i>below</i> .	Vetus, veterior, veterrimus, <i>old</i> .

4. Compounds



4. Compounds in *dīcus*, *lōquus*, *fīcus*, and *volus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus*; as, *malēdīcus*, railing, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*: So *magnīlōquus*, one that boasteth; *benēfīcus*, beneficent; *malēvōlus*, malevolent; *mirīfīcus*, wonderful, *-entior*, *-entissimus*, or *mirīfīcissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased, yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

Deterior, *worse*, *detrerrimus*.

Propior, *nearer*, *proximus*.

Ocior, *swifter*, *ocissimus*.

Uterior, *farther*, *ultimus*.

Prior, *former*, *primus*.

2. The following want the comparative:

Inclŷtus, *inclytissimus*, *renowned*.

Nupĕrus, *nuperrimus*, *late*.

Merītus, *meritissimus*, *deserving*.

Par, *parissimus*, *equal*.

Novus, *novissimus*, *new*.

Sacer, *facerrimus*, *sacred*.

3. The following want the superlative:

Adolescens, *adoleſcentior*, *young*.

Pronus, *pronior*, *inclined downwards*.

Diuturnus, *diuturnior*, *lasting*.

Ingens, *ingentior*, *huge*.

Satur, *faturior*, *full*.

Juvĕnis, *junior*, *young*.

Senex, *senior*, *old*.

Opīmus, *opimior*, *rich*.

To supply the superlative of *juvĕnis* or *adolescens*, we say *minimus natus*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maximus natus*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *īlis*, *ālis*, and *bīlis*, also want the superlative; as, *civīlis*, *civīlior*, *civil*; *regālis*, *regalior*, *regal*; *flēbīlis*, *-ior*, *lamentable*. So *juvenīlis*, *youthful*; *exīlis*, *small*; *regālis*, *like a king*, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: Thus, *arcānus*, *-ior*, *secret*; *declīvis*, *-ior*, *bending downwards*; *longinquus*, *-ior*, *far off*; *propinquus*, *-ior*, *near*.

*Anterior*, *former*; *sequior*, *worse*, *ſatior*, *better*; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all: such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versicōlor*, of divers colours; *pestīſer*, *poisonous*: also adjectives in *us* pure, in *īvus*, *īnus*, *orus*, or *imus*; as, *dubius*, *doubtful*; *vacuus*, *empty*; *fugitīvus*, *that flieth away*; *matutīnus*, *early*; *canōrus*, *shrill*; *legitīmus*, *lawful*: together with a great many others of various terminations.



This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree ; and *maxime* for the superlative ; thus, *egēnus*, needy ; *magis egenus*, more needy ; *maxime egenus*, most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

## P R O N O U N.

A pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a noun*.

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks ; *thou*, for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the two frequent repetition of the same word ; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

## E N G L I S H P R O N O U N S.

In English there are five substantive pronouns, *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, and *it*.

The first is used, when one speaks of himself ; as, *I love* : the second, when the person spoken to is the subject of the discourse ; as, *thou lovest* : and the last three, in speaking of any other person or thing ; as, *he*, *she*, or *it falls*.

*I* is said to be of the first person ; *thou*, of the second ; and *he*, *she*, or *it*, together with all other words, of the third : and so in the plural number, *we*, *ye*, *they*. Hence these are called *Personal Pronouns*.

The person speaking, and the person spoken to, do not need the distinction of gender ; because they are supposed to be present, and therefore their sex is commonly known. But the third person, or thing spoken of, being frequently absent, and often unknown, requires to be distinguished by different genders ; thus *he*, *she*, *it*.

Substantive pronouns in English have three cases, the *nominative*, the *genitive* or *possessive*, and the *objective* or *accusative*



*accusative* case, which follows the verb active, or the preposition.

*Substantive Pronouns, according to their Cases, Numbers, and Persons.*

<i>Singular. Persons.</i>				<i>Plural. Persons.</i>		
<i>Cases.</i>	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Nom.</i>	I,	thou,	he, she, it;	we,	ye or you,	they.
<i>Gen.</i>	mine,	thine,	his, hers, its;	ours,	yours,	theirs.
<i>Acc.</i>	me,	thee,	him, her, it;	us,	you,	them.

All other pronouns are adjectives; as, *this, that, our, your, &c.* A pronominal adjective differs from a common adjective in this, that it does not express quality.

Several adjective pronouns do not admit the article before them, because they very much resemble it in their signification; as, *that* man, &c.

From the personal pronouns are formed these pronominal adjectives, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their.* *Mine* and *thine* are often used as adjectives for *my* and *thy*, when the substantive following them begins with a vowel.

Some adjective pronouns are varied to mark number; as, *this, these; that, those.* To these add the adjectives *other, one*, which, when their substantive is not expressed, have in the plural *others, ones*; as, *many others, great ones*; in which case they seem to be used as substantives.

*Who, which, that*, are called *Relatives*, because they refer to some substantive going before, which is therefore called the *Antecedent*. *Who* is varied by cases, thus, *who, whose, whom.* *His* and *whose* seem to be contractions for *him's* and *whom's*, the possessive case being formed from the objective; as, *hers* from *her*; *mine* from *me*, &c.

*Who, which, what, whether*, are called *Interrogatives*, when used in asking questions; when used otherwise, they are called *Indefinites*.

*Own*, and *self*, in the plural *selves*, are joined to the possessives, *my, our, thy, your, his, her, their*; as, *my or mine own hand, myself, yourselves.* *Self* is likewise joined to the substantive pronoun *it*; as, *itself.* *Himself, themselves*, seem to be used by corruption for *hisself, theirselves*.



## LATIN PRONOUNS.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen ; *ego, tu, sui ; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui ; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester ; nostras, vestras, and cujas.*

Three of them are substantives, *ego, tu, sui* ; the other fifteen are adjectives.

## Ego, I.

*Sing.*  
*Nom.* ego, I,  
*Gen.* mei, of me,  
*Dat.* mihi, to me,  
*Acc.* me, me,  
*Voc.* —————  
*Abl.* me, with me.

*Plur.*  
*Nom.* nos, we,  
*Gen.* nostrum or nostri, of us.  
*Dat.* nobis, to us,  
*Acc.* nos, us,  
*Voc.* —————  
*Abl.* nobis, with us.

## Tu, thou.

*Sing.*  
*N.* tu, thou,  
*G.* tui, of thee,  
*D.* tibi, to thee,  
*A.* te, thee,  
*V.* tu, O thou,  
*A.* te, with thee, } or you.

*Plur.*  
*N.* vos, ye or you,  
*G.* vestrum or -tri, of you,  
*D.* vobis, to you,  
*A.* vos, you,  
*V.* vos, O ye or you,  
*A.* vobis, with you.

## Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

*Sing.*  
*N.* —————  
*G.* sui, of himself, of herself, of itself,  
*D.* sibi, to himself, to herself, &c.  
*A.* se, himself, &c.  
*V.* —————  
*A.* se, with himself, &c.

*Plur.*  
*N.* —————  
*G.* sui, of themselves,  
*D.* sibi, to themselves,  
*A.* se, themselves,  
*V.* —————  
*A.* se, with themselves.

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person : thus we cannot say, *O ego, O I ; O nos, O we.*

Obs. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mî*.

Obs.



Obf. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *noſtro-  
rum* and *noſtrarum*; of *tu*. *veſtrorum* and *veſtrarum*,  
which were afterwards contracted into *noſtrûm* and *veſtrûm*.

We commonly uſe *noſtrûm* and *veſtrûm*, after partitives,  
numerals, comparatives, or ſuperlatives; and *noſtri* and  
*veſtri* after other words.

The Engliſh ſubſtantive pronouns, *he*, *ſhe*, *it*, are ex-  
preſſed in Latin by theſe pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iſte*,  
*hic*, or *is*; as,

*Ille*, for the maſc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neut.  
that: or, *ille*, he; *illa*, ſhe; *illud*, it, or that.

Sing.			Plur.		
N. ille,	illa,	illud,	N. illi,	illæ,	illa,
G. illius,	illius,	illius,	G. illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
D. illi,	illi,	illi,	D. illis,	illis,	illis,
A. illum,	illam,	illud,	A. illos,	illas,	illa,
V. ille,	illa,	illud,	V. illi,	illæ,	illa,
A. illo,	illâ,	illo.	A. illis,	illis,	illis.

*Ipſe*, he himſelf, *ipſa*, ſhe herſelf, *ipſum*, itſelf; and  
*iſte*, *iſta*, *iſtua*, that, are declined like *ille*; only *ipſe* has  
*ipſum* in the nom. acc. and voc. ſing. neuter.

*Ipſe* is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *ſui*; and has in Latin the  
ſame force with *ſelf* in Engliſh, when joined with a poſ-  
ſeſſive pronoun; as, *ego ipſe*, I myſelf.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

Sing.			Plur.		
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	N. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	G. horum,	harum,	horum,
D. huic,	huic,	huic,	D. his,	his,	his,
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. hos,	has,	hæc,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	V. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
A. hoc,	hac,	hoc.	A. his,	his,	his.

Is, ea, id; *he*, *ſhe*, *it*; or *that*.

Sing.			Plur.		
N. is,	ea,	id,	N. ii,	eæ,	ea,
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	G. eorum,	earum,	eorum,
D. ei,	ei,	ei,	D. iis, or eis, &c.		
A. eum,	eam,	id,	A. eos,	eas,	ea,
V. ———			V. ———		
A. eo,	eâ,	eo.	A. iis, or eis, &c.		

*Quis,*



*Quis, quæ, quod, or quid?* which, what? Or *Quis?* who, or what man? *quæ?* who? or what woman? *quod* or *quid?* what? or what thing?

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> quis, quæ, quod, or quid,	<i>N.</i> qui, quæ, quæ,
<i>G.</i> cujus, cujus, cujus,	<i>G.</i> quorum, quarum, quorum,
<i>D.</i> cui, cui, cui,	<i>D.</i> queis, or quibus, &c.
<i>A.</i> quem, quam, quod, or quid,	<i>A.</i> quos, quas, quæ,
<i>V.</i> _____	<i>V.</i> _____
<i>A.</i> quo, qua, quo.	<i>A.</i> queis, or quibus, &c.

*Qui, quæ, quod,* who, which, that; Or, vir *qui*, the man *who* or *that*; fœmina *quæ*, the woman *who* or *that*; negotium *quod*, the thing *which* or *that*: genit. vir *cujus*, the man *whose* or *of whom*; mulier, *cujus*, the woman *whose*, or *of whom*; negotium *cujus*, the thing *of which*, seldom *whose*, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> qui, quæ, quod,	<i>N.</i> qui, quæ, quæ,
<i>G.</i> cujus, cujus, cujus,	<i>G.</i> quorum, quarum, quorum,
<i>D.</i> cui, cui, cui,	<i>D.</i> queis, or quibus, &c.
<i>A.</i> quem, quam, quod,	<i>A.</i> quos, quas, quæ,
<i>V.</i> _____	<i>V.</i> _____
<i>A.</i> quo, qua, quo.	<i>A.</i> queis, or quibus, &c.

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; and *noster*, our; *vester*, your, like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension.

*Nostras*, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostrātis*, dat. *nostrāti*, &c.

Pronouns, as well as nouns, that signify things, which cannot be addressed, or called upon, want the vocative.

*Meus* hath *mi*, or sometimes *meus*, in the vocative singular, masculine.

The relative *qui* has frequently *quī* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

*Qui* is sometimes used for *quis*: and instead of *cujus* the genit. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun *cujus*, -a, -um.



Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes :

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or, as if present : *Ego, tu, hic, iste*, and sometimes, *ille, is, ipse*

2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before : *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui*.

3. *Possessives*, which signify possession : *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*.

4. *Patrials or Gentiles*, which signify one's country : *nostras, vestras, cujas*.

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question : *quis ? cujas ?* When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.

6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind : *sui*, and *suus*.

## COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously :

1. With other pronouns ; as, *isthic, isthæc, isthoc, isthuc*, or *istuc*. Acc. *Isthunc, isthanc, isthoc*, or *isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc, isthac, isthoc*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthæc*, of *iste* and *hic*

2. With some other parts of speech ; as, *eccum, eccam ; eccos, eccas*, and sometimes *ecca*, in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added ; as, *hicce, hæcce, bocce ; hujusce, hice, hisce, hosce* ; of *hic* and *ce*. So *idem*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined :

Sing.			Plur.		
N. <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>īdem</i> ,	N. <i>iīdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
G. <i>ejusdem</i> ,	<i>ejusdem</i> ,	<i>ejusdem</i> ,	G. <i>eorundem</i> ,	<i>earundem</i> ,	<i>eorundem</i> ,
D. <i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>eīdem</i> ,	D. <i>eīdem</i> ,	or <i>iīdem</i> ,	&c.
A. <i>eundem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> ,	<i>īdem</i> ,	A. <i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
V. <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>īdem</i> ,	V. <i>iīdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
A. <i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> .	A. <i>eīdem</i> ,	or <i>iīdem</i> ,	&c.

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

*Quis* in composition, is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded : but *qui* is always the first.

I. The



1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one; *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, whosoever; which are thus declined:

Nom.			Gen.	Dat.
Quisnam,	quænam,	quodnam, or quidnam;	cujusnam,	cuinam,
Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam, or quidpiam;	cujuspiam,	cuipiam,
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quodquam, or quidquam;	cujusquam,	cuiquam.
Quisque,	quæque,	quodque, or quidque;	cujusque,	cuique,
Quisquis,	——	quidquid, or quicquid;	cujuscujus,	cuicui.

And so in the other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam*, for *quidquam*. Accusative, *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nominative sing. fem. and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut. as, *aliquis*, some; *ecquis*, who? also *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately, thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined:

Nom.		Gen.	Dat.
Aliquis, aliqua,	aliquod, or aliquid,	alicujus,	alicui,
Ecquis, ecqua, or ecquæ,	ecquod, or ecquid,	eccujus,	eccui,
Si quis, si qua,	si quod, or si quid,	si cujus,	si cui,
Ne quis, ne qua,	ne quod, or ne quid,	ne cujus,	ne cui,
Num quis, num qua,	num quod, or num quid,	num cujus,	num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *ecquisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *uniuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined:

Nom.			Gen.	Dat.
Quicunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque,	cujuscunque,	cuicunque,
Quidam,	quædam,	quoddam, or quiddam,	cujusdam,	cuidam,
Quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet, or quidlibet,	cujuslibet,	cuilibet,
Quivis,	quævis,	quodvis, or quidvis,	cujusvis,	cuivis.

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus* in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs.



Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur. *n* being put instead of *m* for the better found.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used, when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason they are by some reckoned substantives.

## V E R B.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as,

The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all: thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation or assertion is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, *-ōris*, love, a substantive, and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs,



Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition; as in a state of motion or rest, &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon, as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo litēras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambūlo*, I walk; *curro*, I run. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistere*, to stop; *incipere*, to begin; *durare*, to endure, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be, or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*; as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.



The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three; *First*, *Second*, *Third*.

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action; as, *āmo*, I love: the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes* or *Moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall love: or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me obsēcret*, *redībo*, if he intreat me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or intreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person, or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenses* or *Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsēram*, I had written.



Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered, either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, *or*, I shall [*then*] be writing; *scripsĕro*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks *how many* we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shews to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

## E N G L I S H V E R B S.

English verbs change their termination to express only the present and the past time of the Active voice; and in regular verbs, the Perfect participle is always the same with the perfect or past time, both of them ending in *ed*, or *'d*. The present participle always ends in *ing*. The English has no future participle, which defect is supplied by a circumlocution; as, *about to love*.

An English Verb is thus varied :

T O L O V E.

A C T I V E V O I C E.

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present Time.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Person.	1. I love,	We love,
	2. Thou lovest.	Ye <i>or</i> you love,
	3. He loveth <i>or</i> loves ;	They love.

*Past*



*Past Time.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Person.		
1.	I loved,	We loved,
2.	Thou lovedst,	Ye <i>or</i> you loved,
3.	He loved ;	They loved.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Present Time.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	I love,	We love,
2.	Thou love,	Ye <i>or</i> you love,
3.	He love ;	They love.

*Imperative Mode.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
2.	Love thou,	Love ye, <i>or</i> love you.

*Infinitive Mode.*

*Participle.*

*Present, To love.*

*Present, Loving ; Perfect, Loved.*

The several remaining parts of the English verb are formed by the assistance of other verbs, called therefore *Auxiliaries* or *Helpers*. The chief of these are, *have, be, shall,* and *will*, which are thus varied :

TO HAVE.

*Indicative Mode.*

*Present Time.*

*Past Time.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Person.				
1.	I have,	We have,	1. I had,	We had,
2.	Thou hast,	Ye have,	2. Thou hadst,	Ye had,
3.	He hath, <i>or</i> has ;	They have.	3. He had ;	They had.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Imperative Mode.*

*Present.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	I have,	We have,	2. Have thou ;	Have ye.
2.	Thou have,	Ye have,		
3.	He have ;	They have.		



*Infinitive Mode.**Participle.**Present.* To have.*Present, Having. Perfect, Had.*

## T O B E.

*Indicative Mode.**Present Time.**Past Time.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I am,	We are,
2. Thou art,	Ye are,
3. He is ;	They are.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I was,	We were,
2. Thou wast,	Ye were,
3. He was ;	They were.

*Subjunctive Mode.**Present.**Past Time.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I be,	We be,
2. Thou be,	Ye be,
3. He be ;	They be.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I were,	We were,
2. Thou wert,	Ye were,
3. He were ;	They were.

*Imperative Mode.**Infinitive Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
2. Be thou ;	Be ye.

*Present.* To be.*Participle.**Present, Being.**Perfect, Been.*

## S H A L L.

## W I L L.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I shall,	We shall,
2. Thou shalt,	Ye shall,
3. He shall ;	They shall.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. I will,	We will,
2. Thou wilt,	Ye will,
3. He will ;	They will.

The terminations of these auxiliary verbs seem to be irregular. Most of them however are only contractions of the regular form. Thus, *hast* is contracted for *havest*; *hath*, for *haveth*; *has*, for *haves*; and *wilt*, for *willest*; which last is likewise used from the regular verb, *to will*; thus, *I will*, *thou willest*, *he willeth* or *wills*, &c.

The tenses of the subjunctive mode are expressed by *may* or *can*; *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, together with



with the other auxiliary verbs. *Would, wouldst*, comes from *will*; and *should, shouldst*, from *shall*. *Might* and *could* seem to be the past time of *may* and *can*.

To express with greater force the present and past time of the Indicative Mode, we use the auxiliary verb *do*; as, *I do love*; *I did love*. And so in the Imperative, *do thou love, do ye love*. In the third person of the Imperative, we always use *let*, which, being an active verb, has always an accusative after it; as, *let him love, let them love*.

When we speak of present time indeterminately, we use the simple form; as, *I love, I loved*: but when we speak of it with some particular limitation, we use an auxiliary; as, *I am loving* just now; *I was* (then) *loving*. The termination *th*, in the third person of the present of the Indicative, properly belongs to solemn discourse; as, *he hath, he doth, &c.*

The whole of the passive voice in English is formed by the auxiliary verb *to be*, and the participle perfect; as, *I am loved, I was loved, &c.* In many verbs the present participle also is used in a passive sense; as, *These things are doing, were doing, &c.*; *The house is building, was building, &c.*

When an auxiliary is joined to a verb, the auxiliary is varied according to number and person, and the verb itself always continues the same. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the verb, the first of them only is varied according to person and number. The auxiliary *must* admits of no variation.

*Shall* and *will* are always employed to express future time. *Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretells: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question: thus, “*I shall go*,” “*you will go*,” express event only; but “*will you go*?” imports intention; and “*shall I go*?” refers to the will of another.

The neuter verb is varied like the active; but sometimes it assumes the passive form; as, *I had fallen, or I was fallen*.

## IRREGULAR ENGLISH VERBS.

The English language abounds in irregular verbs.



A verb in English is said to be irregular, which has not the past time and the participle Perfect in *ed*.

Most English verbs are liable to some irregularity from contraction.

To this we are led by the nature of the language, and the manner of pronouncing it. Thus, instead of *loved*, *lovedest*, we say *lov'd*, *lovedst*. Hence in many verbs *ed* is changed into *t*; as, *snatcht*, *checkt*, *snapt*, *mixt*, *dwelt*, *past*, *meant*, *felt*, *left*, *bereft*, &c. for *snatched*, *checked*, &c. In such words however, the entire form is also used, and in general to be preferred. They are not therefore commonly ranked among irregular verbs.

Irregular verbs in English, properly so called, are all monosyllables, unless compounded; and may be reduced to the three following classes, in which those marked thus \*, are likewise used in the regular form.

### 1. *Irregulars by Contraction.*

These commonly end in *d* or *t*, and have the Present, the Past Time, and the Participle Perfect, all alike, without any variation: as, *beat*, *burst*, *cast*, *cost*, *cut*, *hit*, *hurt*, *knit*, *let*, *lift*\*, *light*\*, *put*, *quit*\*, *read*, *rent*, *rid*, *set*, *shed*, *shred*, *shut*, *slit*, *split*, *spread*, *thrust*, *wet*\*; all of which are contracted for *beated*, *burstled*, *casted*, &c.

The following in the Past Time, and Participle Perfect, vary a little from the Present; as, *lead*, *led*; *sweat*, *swet*\*; *meet*, *met*; *breed*, *bred*; *feed*, *fed*; *speed*, *sped*; *bend*, *bent*\*; *lend*, *lent*; *rend*, *rent*; *send*, *sent*; *spend*, *spent*; *build*, *built*\*; *geld*, *gelt*\*; *gild*, *gilt*\*; *gird*, *girt*\*; *lose*, *lost*.

*Sold*, *told*, *had*, *made*, *fled*, *shod*, *clad*\*; from *sell*, *tell*, *have*, *make*, *flee*, *shoe*, *clothe*; are contracted for *selled*, *telled*, &c. *Stand* has *stood*; *dare*, *durst*, in the participle, *dared*.

### 2. *Irregulars in ght.*

These are few in number, and have the Past Time and Participle in *ght*; as, *bring*, *brought*; *buy*, *bought*; *catch*, *caught*; *fight*, *fought*; *teach*, *taught*; *think*, *thought*; *seek*, *sought*; *work*, *wrought*.

### 3. *Irregulars*



3. *Irregulars in en.*

This is by far the most numerous class of irregular verbs. They have commonly the Participle Perfect in *en*, and form the Past Time by changing the vowel or diphthong of the Present. Some form the Past Time regularly.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Strive,	strove *,	striven *.
Awake,	awoke *,	(awaked).	Smite,	smote,	smitten.
Forfake,	forfook,	forfaken.	Stride,	strode,	stridden.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.	Shrive,	shrove,	shriven.
Take,	took,	taken.	Thrive,	throve,	thriven.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Write,	wrote,	written.
Slay,	flew,	flain.	Strike,	struck,	stricken or strucken.
Get,	gat or got,	gotten.	Bid,	bade,	bidden.
Help,	(helped),	holpen *.	Give,	gave,	given.
Melt,	melted,	molten *.	Sit,	sat,	sitten.
Swell,	swelled,	swollen *.	Spit,	spat,	spitten.
Eat,	ate,	eaten.	Dig,	dug *,	digged.
Bear,	bare or bore,	born.	Lie,	lay,	lain or lien.
Breake,	brake or broke,	broken.	Chuse,	chose,	chosen.
Cleave,	clave or clove *,	cloven.	Hold,	held,	holden.
Speak,	spake or spoke,	spoken.	Do,	did,	done.
Swear,	sware or swore.	sworn.	Blow,	blew,	blown.
'Tear,	tare or tore,	torn.	Crow,	crew,	(crowed).
Wear,	ware or wore,	worn.	Grow,	grew,	grown.
Heave,	hove *,	hoven *.	Know,	knew,	known.
Shear,	shore,	shorn.	Throw,	threw,	thrown.
Steal,	stole,	stolen.	Fly,	flew,	flown.
Tread,	trode,	trodden.	Bake,	(baked),	baken *.
Weave,	wove,	woven.	Grave,	(graved),	graven *.
Creep,	crope *,	crept *.	Hew,	(hewed),	hewen or hewn.
Freeze,	froze,	frozen.	Lade,	(laded),	laden.
Seethe,	fod,	fodden.	Load,	(loaded),	loaden *.
See,	saw,	seen.	Mow,	(mowed),	mown *.
Bite,	bit,	bitten.	Rive,	(rived),	riven.
Chide,	chid,	chidden.	Saw,	(sawed),	sawn *.
Hide,	hid,	hidden.	Shave,	(shaved),	shaven *.
Slide,	slid,	slidden.	Shew,	(shewed),	shewn *.
Abide,	abode,		Show,	(showed),	shown.
Climb,	clomb,	(climbed).	Sow,	(sowed),	sown *.
Drive,	drove,	driven.	Straw,	(strawed, or flow,	strawn *.
Ride,	rode,	ridden.	Wash,	(washed),	washen *.
Rise,	rose,	risen.	Wax,	(waxed),	waxen *.
Shine,	shone *,	shined.	Wreath,	(wreathed),	wreathen *.
			Writhe,	(writhed),	writhen.

Several



Several verbs seem to have dropt the termination *en* in the Participle ; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Begin,	began,	begun.	Stink,	stank or stunk,	stunk.
Cling,	clang or clung,	clung.	String,	strung,	strung.
Drink,	drank,	drunk or drunken.	Swim,	swam or swum,	swum.
Fling,	flung,	flung.	Swing,	swung,	swung.
Ring,	rang or rung,	rung.	Wring,	wrung,	wrung.
Shrink,	shrank or shrunk,	shrunk.	Bind,	bound,	bound or bounden.
Sing,	sang or sung,	sung.	Find,	found,	found.
Sink,	sank or sunk,	sunk.	Grind,	ground,	ground.
Sling,	slang or slung,	slung.	Wind,	wound,	wound.
Slink,	slunk,	slunk.	Hang,	hung *,	hung *.
Spin,	span or spun,	spun.	Shoot,	shot,	shot.
Spring,	sprang or sprung,	sprung.	Stick,	stuck,	stuck.
Sting,	stung,	stung.	Come,	came,	come.
			Run,	ran,	run.
			Win,	won,	won.

Frequent mistakes are committed with regard to those verbs which make the Participle Perfect different from the Past Time : thus it is said, *he begun*, for *he began*; *he run*, for *he ran*; the Participle being used instead of the Past Time : and much more frequently the Past Time instead of the Participle ; as, *I had wrote*, for *I had written*; *it was wrote*, for *it was written* : so *bore*, for *borne*; *chose*, for *chosen*; *bid*, for *bidden*, &c.

Several verbs are either defective, or made up of parts derived from different verbs of the same signification ; as, *go*, *went*, *gone*; *sweet*, *wit* or *wot*, *wot*; *wis*, *wist*; *aught*, *quoth*, *must*, together with most of the auxiliary verbs.

#### L A T I N V E R B S.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished :

The First has *a* long before *re* of the Infinitive ; the Second has *e* long, the Third has *e* short,



short, and the Fourth has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses :

A C T I V E V O I C E.

*Indicative Mode.*

Present Tense.

		<i>Singular.</i> <i>Persons.</i>			<i>Plural.</i> <i>Persons.</i>		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Conjugat.	1.	-o,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
	2.	-eo,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
	3.	-o <i>or</i> io,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt, <i>or</i> -iunt.
	4.	-io,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat ;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
<i>or, if the verb end in io, as,</i>						
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat ;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1.	-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit ;	-ābīmus,	-ābītis,	-ābunt.
2.	-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit ;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
<i>or as,</i>						
4.	-iam,	-ies,	-iet ;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-iēnt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Present Tense.

1.	-em,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2.	-eām,	-eas,	-eat ;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
<i>or as,</i>						
4.	-iam,	-ias,	-iat ;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

Imperfect.



## Imperfect.

1. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret ;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2. -ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret ;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3. -ěrem,	-ěres,	-ěret ;	-ěrēmus,	-ěrētis,	-ěrent.
4. -īrem,	-īres,	-īret ;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-īrent.

*Imperative Mode.*

2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -a or -āto,	-āto ;	-āte or -ātōte,	-anto.
2. -e or -ēto,	-ēto ;	-ēte or -ētōte,	-ento.
3. -e or -īto,	-īto ;	-īte or -ītōte,	-unto or iunto.
4. -i or -īto,	-īto ;	-īte or -ītōte,	-iunto.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

## Present Tense.

1. -or,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
2. -eor,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
3. -or or -ior,	-ěris or -ěre,	-ītur ;	-īmur,	-īmīni,	-untur or -iuntur.
4. -ior,	-īris or -īre,	-ītur ;	-imur,	-imīni,	-iuntur.

## Imperfect.

1. -ābar,	-ābāris or -ābāre,	-ābātur ;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmīni,	-ābantur.
2. -ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur ;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
3. -ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur ;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
4. -iēbar,	-iēbāris,	-iēbāre, -iēbātur ;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmīni,	-iēbantur.

## Future.

1. -ābor,	-ābēris or -abēre,	-ābītur ;	-ābīmur,	-ābīmīni,	-ābuntur.
2. -ēbor,	-ēbēris or -ebēre,	-ēbītur ;	-ēbīmur,	-ēbīmīni,	-ēbuntur.
3. -ar,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
4. -iar,	-iēris or -iēre,	-iētur ;	-iēmur,	-iēmīni,	-ientur.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

## Present Tense.

1. -er,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
2. -ear,	-eāris or eāre,	-eātur ;	-eāmur,	-eāmīni,	-eantur.
3. -ar,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-amīni,	-antur.
4. -iar,	-iāris or -iāre,	-iātur ;	-iāmur,	-iāmīni,	-iantur.

## Imperfect.

1. -ārer,	-ārēris or -ārēre,	-ārētur ;	-ārēmur,	-ārēmīni,	-ārentur.
2. -ērer,					



2. -ērer, -ērēris or -ērēre, -ērētur ; -ērēmur, -ērēmīni, -ērentur.  
 3. -ĕrer, -ĕrēris or -ĕrēre, -ĕrētur ; -ĕrēmur, -ĕrēmīni, -ĕrentur.  
 4. -īrer, -īrēris or -īrēre, -īrētur ; -īrēmur, -īrēmīni, -īrentur.

*Imperative Mode.*

2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -āre or -ātor,	-ātor ;	-āmīni,	āntor.
2. -ēre or -ētor,	-ētor ;	-ēmīni,	-ēntor.
3. -ĕre or -ītor,	-ītōr ;	-īmīni,	-untor or -iuntor.
4. -īre or -ītor,	-ītor ;	-īmīni,	-iuntor.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

A C T I V E V O I C E.

*Indicative Mode.*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Perf.</i> -i,	-isti,	-it ;	-īmus,	-istis,	ērunt or -ēre.
<i>Plu.</i> -ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat ;	-ĕrāmus,	-ĕrātis,	-ĕrant.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Perf.</i> -ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit ;	-ĕrīmus,	-ĕrītis,	-ĕrint.
<i>Plu.</i> -issem,	-isses,	-isset ;	-isēmus,	-isētis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i> -ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit ;	-ĕrīmus,	-ĕrītis,	-ĕrint.

These tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

*Sum* is an irregular verb, and thus varied :

Principal Parts.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>
Sum,	fui,	esse, To be.

*Indicative Mode.*

Present Tense. *am.*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

Person.	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
	Sum; <i>I am,</i>	Es, <i>Thou art,</i> or <i>you are,</i>	Est, <i>He is ;</i>	Sūmus, <i>We are,</i>	Estis, <i>Ye or you are,</i>	Sunt, <i>They are.</i>

Imperfect.



Imperfect. *was.*

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1. Eram, <i>I was.</i>                  | Erāmus, <i>We were,</i>  |
| 2. Eras, <i>Thou wast, or you were.</i> | Erātis, <i>Ye were,</i>  |
| 3. Erat, <i>He was ;</i>                | Erant, <i>They were.</i> |

Perfect. *have been or was.*

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. Fui, <i>I have been,</i>       | Fuīmus, <i>We have been,</i>            |
| 2. Fuisti, <i>Thou hast been.</i> | Fuistis, <i>Ye have been,</i>           |
| 3. Fuit, <i>He hath been ;</i>    | Fuērunt or -ēre, <i>They have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *had been.*

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Fuēram, <i>I had been,</i>      | Fuērāmus, <i>We had been,</i>  |
| 2. Fueras, <i>Thou hadst been,</i> | Fueratis, <i>Ye had been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuerat, <i>He had been ;</i>    | Fuerant, <i>They had been.</i> |

Future. *shall or will.*

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Ero, <i>I shall be,</i>     | Erīmus, <i>We shall be,</i>  |
| 2. Eris, <i>Thou shalt be,</i> | Eritis, <i>Ye shall be,</i>  |
| 3. Erit, <i>He shall be ;</i>  | Erunt, <i>They shall be.</i> |

## Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can.*

- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Sim, <i>I may be,</i>       | Sīmus, <i>We may be,</i>  |
| 2. Sis, <i>Thou mayest be,</i> | Sitis, <i>Ye may be,</i>  |
| 3. Sit, <i>He may be ;</i>     | Sint, <i>They may be.</i> |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- |                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Essem, <i>I might be,</i>       | Essēmus, <i>We might be,</i>  |
| 2. Esset, <i>Thou mightest be,</i> | Essetis, <i>Ye might be,</i>  |
| 3. Esset, <i>He might be ;</i>     | Essent, <i>They might be.</i> |

Perfect. *may have.*

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuērim, <i>I may have been,</i>       | Fuērīmus, <i>We may have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fueris, <i>Thou mayest have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye may have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuerit, <i>He may have been ;</i>     | Fuerint, <i>They may have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Fuissem, <i>I might have been,</i>       | Fuissēmus, <i>We might have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fuisses, <i>Thou mightest have been,</i> | Fuissetis, <i>Ye might have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuisset, <i>He might have been ;</i>     | Fuissent, <i>They might have been.</i> |

Future.



Future. *shall have.*

1. Fuero, *I shall have been,* Fuerimus, *We shall have been,*
2. Fueris, *Thou shalt have been,* Fueritis, *Ye shall have been,*
3. Fuerit, *He shall have been;* Fuerint, *They shall have been.*

*Imperative Mode.*

2. Es *vel esto, Be thou,* Este *vel estote, Be ye,*
3. Esto, *Let him be;* Sunt, *Let them be.*

*Infinitive.*

*Participle.*

*Pres. Esse, To be.*

*Perf. Fuisse, To have been.*

*Fut. Futurum esse, To be about to be.*

*Future. Futurus, -a, -um, about to be.*

*Futurum fuisse, To have been about to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner however at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, or you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are; &c. So *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *ille amat*, he loveth or loves; *nos amamus*, we love; &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, thou art, or much oftener, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, or you were; *tu sis*, thou mayst be, or you may be, &c. So *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, or you loved, &c.

VERBS are thus varied in the different Conjugations.

F I R S T C O N J U G A T I O N.

A C T I V E V O I C E.

Principal Parts.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinit.</i>
Amo,	amavi,	amatum,	amare, To love.

H

*Indicative*



*Indicative Mode.*

Present Tense. *love, do love, or am loving.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. <b>A</b> M-o,	<i>I love,</i>
2. Am-as,	<i>Thou lovest, or you love,</i>
3. Am-at,	<i>He loveth, or loves ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-āmus,	<i>We love,</i>
2. Am-atis,	<i>Ye or you love,</i>
3. Am-ant,	<i>They love.</i>

Imperfect. *loved, did love, or was loving.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābam,	<i>I loved,</i>
2. Am-abas,	<i>Thou lovedst,</i>
3. Am-abat,	<i>He loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abamus,	<i>We loved,</i>
2. Am-abatis,	<i>Ye or you loved,</i>
3. Am-abant,	<i>They loved.</i>

Perfect. *loved, have loved, or did love.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvi,	<i>I have loved,</i>
2. Am-avisti,	<i>Thou hast loved,</i>
3. Am-avit,	<i>He hath loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-āvīmus,	<i>We have loved,</i>
2. Am-avistis,	<i>Ye have loved,</i>
3. Am-avērunt, <i>vel</i> -avēre,	<i>They have loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *had.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvēram,	<i>I had loved,</i>
2. Am-averas,	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
3. Am-averat,	<i>He had loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averamus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
2. Am-averatis,	<i>Ye had loved,</i>
3. Am-averant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

Future. *shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love,</i>
2. Am-abis,	<i>Thou shalt love,</i>
3. Am-abit,	<i>He shall love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abīmus,	<i>We shall love,</i>
2. Am-abitis,	<i>Ye shall love,</i>
3. Am-abunt,	<i>They shall love.</i>

*Subjunctive*



*Subjunctive Mode.*Present Tense. *may or can.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-em,	<i>I may love,</i>
2. Am-es,	<i>Thou mayst love,</i>
3. Am-et,	<i>He may love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ēmus,	<i>We may love,</i>
2. Am-etis,	<i>Ye may love,</i>
3. Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ārem,	<i>I might love,</i>
2. Am-ares,	<i>Thou mightst love,</i>
3. Am-aret,	<i>He might love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
2. Am-aretis,	<i>Ye might love,</i>
3. Am-arent,	<i>They might love.</i>

Perfect. *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvērīm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou mayst have loved,</i>
3. Am-averit,	<i>He may have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averīmus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye may have loved,</i>
3. Am-averint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-avissēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
2. Am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightst have loved,</i>
3. Am-avisset,	<i>He might have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-avissēmus,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
2. Am-avissetis,	<i>Ye might have loved,</i>
3. Am-avissent,	<i>They might have loved.</i>

Future. *shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvēro,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou shalt have loved,</i>
3. Am-averit,	<i>He shall have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averīmus,	<i>We shall have loved,</i>
2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye shall have loved,</i>
3. Am-averint,	<i>They shall have loved.</i>



*Imperative Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-a, <i>vel</i> am-āto,	Love thou, or do thou love.
3. Am-ato,	Let him love;
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-āte, <i>vel</i> am-atōte,	Love ye, or do ye love,
3. Am-anto,	Let them love.

*Infinitive Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āre,	To love.
<i>Perf.</i> Am-avisse,	To have loved.
<i>Fut.</i> Am-aturum esse,	To be about to love.
Am-aturum fuisse,	To have been about to love.

*Participle.*

<i>Pres.</i> Am-ans,	Loving.
<i>Fut.</i> Am-aturus, -a, -um,	About to love.

*Gerunds.*

<i>Nom.</i> Am-andum,	Loving,
<i>Gen.</i> Am-andi,	Of loving,
<i>Dat.</i> Am-ando,	To loving,
<i>Acc.</i> Am-andum,	Loving,
<i>Abl.</i> Am-ando,	With loving.

*Supine.*

<i>Former.</i> Am-ātum,	To love,
<i>Latter.</i> Am-atu,	To love, or to be loved.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Amor, amātus, amāri, *to be loved.*

*Indicative Mode.*

Present Tense. *am.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-or,	I am loved,
2. Am-āris, <i>vel</i> -āre,	Thou art loved,
3. Am-atur,	He is loved;
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-amur,	We are loved,
2. Am-amīni,	Ye or you are loved,
3. Am-antur,	They are loved.

*Imperfect.*



Imperfect. *was.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved,</i>
2. Am-abāris <i>vel</i> -abāre,	<i>Thou wast loved,</i>
3. Am-abatur,	<i>He was loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abamur,	<i>We were loved,</i>
2. Am-abamīni,	<i>Ye were loved,</i>
3. Am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>

Perfect. *am; have been, or was.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus sum, <i>vel</i> fui,	<i>I have been loved,</i>
2. Amatus es, <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
3. Amatus est, <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>He hath been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati sumus, <i>v.</i> fuimus,	<i>We have been loved,</i>
2. Amati estis, <i>v.</i> fuistis,	<i>Ye have been loved,</i>
3. Amati sunt, fuerunt, <i>v.</i> fuere.	<i>They have been loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *had been, or was.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus eram <i>vel</i> fueram,	<i>I had been loved,</i>
2. Amatus eras <i>v.</i> fueras,	<i>Thou hadst been loved,</i>
3. Amatus erat <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>He had been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati eramus <i>v.</i> fueramus,	<i>We had been loved,</i>
2. Amati eratis <i>v.</i> fueratis,	<i>Ye had been loved,</i>
3. Amati erant <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>They had been loved.</i>

Future. *shall, or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābor,	<i>I shall be loved,</i>
2. Am-abēris <i>vel</i> -abēre,	<i>Thou shalt be loved,</i>
3. Am-abitur,	<i>He shall be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ābimur,	<i>We shall be loved,</i>
2. Am-abimini,	<i>Ye shall be loved,</i>
3. Am-abuntur,	<i>They shall be loved.</i>

## Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-er,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
2. Am-ēris <i>vel</i> -ēre,	<i>Thou mayst be loved;</i>
3. Am-etur,	<i>He may be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ēmur,	<i>We may be loved,</i>
2. Am-emiini,	<i>Ye may be loved,</i>
3. Am-entur,	<i>They may be loved.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ārer,	<i>I might be loved,</i>
2. Am-arēris <i>vel</i> -arēre,	<i>Thou mightst be loved,</i>
3. Am-aretur,	<i>He might be loved;</i>



<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ārēmur,	<i>We might be loved,</i>
2. Am-aremini,	<i>Ye might be loved,</i>
3. Am-arentur,	<i>They might be loved.</i>

Perfect. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim,	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
2. Amatus sis <i>v.</i> fueris,	<i>Thou mayst have been loved,</i>
3. Amatus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit,	<i>He may have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus,	<i>We may have been loved,</i>
2. Amati sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis,	<i>Ye may have been loved,</i>
3. Amati sint <i>v.</i> fuerint,	<i>They may have been loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have been ;  
or had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus essem <i>vel</i> fuisset,	<i>I might have been loved,</i>
2. Amatus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses,	<i>Thou mightst have been loved,</i>
3. Amatus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset,	<i>He might have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati essemus <i>v.</i> fuissetus,	<i>We might have been loved,</i>
2. Amati essetis <i>v.</i> fuissetis,	<i>Ye might have been loved,</i>
3. Amati essent <i>v.</i> fuissent,	<i>They might have been loved.</i>

Future. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus fuëro,	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
2. Amatus fueris,	<i>Thou shalt have been loved,</i>
3. Amatus fuerit,	<i>He shall have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati fuërimus,	<i>We shall have been loved,</i>
2. Amati fueritis,	<i>Ye shall have been loved,</i>
3. Amati fuerint,	<i>They shall have been loved.</i>

*Imperative Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-āre <i>vel</i> am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved,</i>
3. Am-ātor,	<i>Let him be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-amīni,	<i>Be ye loved,</i>
3. Am-antor,	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

*Infinitive Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āri,	<i>To be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Amatum esse <i>vel</i> fuisse,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Amātum iri,	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

*Participle.*

<i>Pres.</i> Am-atus, -a, -um,	<i>Loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Am-andus, -a, -um,	<i>To be loved.</i>



## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Dōceo, dōcui, doctum, docēre, *To teach.**Indicative Mode.**Sing.**Plur.*

	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>D</b> Oc-eo,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
<i>Im</i>	Doc-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat ;	-ebāmus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doc-ui,	-uisti,	-uit ;	-uīmus,	-uistis,	-uērunt <i>vel</i> -uēre.
<i>Plu.</i>	Doc-uēram,	-ueras,	-uerat ;	-uerāmus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-ēbo,	-ebis,	-ebit ;	-ebīmus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat ;	-eāmus,	-eatis,	-eant.
<i>Im.</i>	Doc-ērem,	-eres,	-eret ;	-erēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doc-uērim,	-ueris,	-uerit ;	-uerīmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Doc-uīsem,	-uisses,	-uisset ;	-uīsemus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-uēro,	-ueris,	-uerit ;	-uerīmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

*Imperative Mode.*

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-e <i>vel</i> -ēto,	-eto ;	-ēte <i>vel</i> -etote,	-ento.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ēre.	<i>Pr</i> Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,	1. Doc-tum,
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-uisse.	<i>Fut.</i> Doc-tūrus.	Doc-endi,	2. Doc-tu.
<i>Fut.</i> Docturum esse <i>vel</i> fuisse.		Doc-endo, &c.	

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Doceor, doctus, docēri, *To be taught.**Indicative Mode.**Sing.**Plur.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Doc-eor,	-ēris, <i>vel</i> -ēre,	-etur ;	-emur,	-emīni,	-entur.
<i>Im.</i>	Doc-ebar,	-ebāris, <i>vel</i> -ebare,	-ebatur ;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doctus sum <i>vel</i> fui, doctus es <i>vel</i> fuisti, &c.					
<i>Plu.</i>	Doctus eram <i>v.</i> fueram, doctus eras <i>v.</i> fueras, &c.					
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-ebor,	-ebūris, <i>vel</i> -ebere,	-ebitur ;	-ebīmur,	-ebimini,	-ebuntur.

*Subjunctive*



*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Doc-ear, -eāris, -eatur; -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.  
*vel* -eare,

*Im.* Doc-erer, -erēris, -eretur; -èremur, -eremini, -erentur.  
*vel* -erēre,

*Perf.* Doctus sim *vel* fuerim, doctus sis *vel* fueris, &c.

*Plu.* Doctus essem *v.* fuisssem, doctus esses *v.* fuisses, &c.

*Fut.* Doctus fuero, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.

*Imperative Mode.*

*Pres.* Doc-ēre *vel* -ētor, -etor; -emini, -entor.  
 2. 3. 2. 3.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

*Pres.* Doc-eri,

*Perf.* Doc-tus, -a, -um.

*Perf.* Doctum esse *vel* fuisse,

*Fut.* Doc-endus, -a, -um.

*Fut.* Doctum iri,

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, lēgēre, *To read.*

*Indicative Mode.*

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pr.</i> <b>L</b> Eg-o,	-is,	-it;		-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.
<i>Im.</i> Leg-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;		-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i> Lēg-i,	-isti,	-it;		-īmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, -ēre
<i>Plu.</i> Leg-ēram,	-eras,	-erat;		-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
<i>Fut.</i> Leg-am,	-es,	-et;		-ēmus,	-etis,	-ent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pres.</i> Leg-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
<i>Im.</i> Leg-ērem,	-eres,	-eret;	-ērēmus,	-erētis,	-erent.
<i>Per.</i> Leg-ērim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-erint.
<i>Plu.</i> Leg-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i> Leg-ēro,	-eris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-erint.

*Imperative Mode.*

*Pres.* Leg-e *vel* -īto, -īto; -īte *vel* -ītōte, -unto.  
 2. 3. 2. 3.

*Infinitive.*



<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres</i> Leg ere,	<i>Pr.</i> Leg-ens.	Leg-endum.	1. Lec-tum.
<i>Perf</i> Leg-isse,	<i>Fut.</i> Lec-tūrus.	Leg-endi.	2. Lec-tu.
<i>Fut.</i> Lectūrum esse <i>vel</i> fuisse.		Leg-endo, &c.	

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Lēgor, lectus, lēgi, *To be read.*

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Leg-ōr, -ēris, <i>vel</i> -ēre, -ītur;	-īmur, -imīni, -untur.
<i>Im.</i> Leg-ēbar, -ebaris, <i>vel</i> -ebare, -ebatur;	-ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
<i>Per.</i> Lectus sum <i>vel</i> fui, lectus es <i>vel</i> fuisti, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i> Lectus eram <i>vel</i> fueram, lectus eras <i>vel</i> fueras, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i> Legar, -ēris, <i>vel</i> -ēre, -ētur;	-ēmur, -emini, -entur.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i> Leg-ar, -āris, <i>vel</i> -are, -atur;	-amur, -amini, -antur.
<i>Im.</i> Leg-ērer, -erēris, <i>vel</i> -erēre, -eretur;	-eremur, -eremini, -erentur.
<i>Perf.</i> Lectus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim, lectus sis <i>vel</i> fueris, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i> Lectus essem <i>v.</i> fuisssem, lectus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i> Lectus fuero, lectus fueris, lectus fuerit, &c.	

*Imperative Mode.*

*Pres.* Leg-ēre *vel* -ītor, -ītor; -imīni, -untor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

<i>Pres.</i> Leg-i.	<i>Perf.</i> Lec-tus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Lectum esse <i>vel</i> fuisse.	<i>Fut.</i> Leg-endus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Lectum iri.	

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *To hear.*

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> <b>A</b> 1. Ud-io, 2. -is, 3. -it;	1. -īmus, 2. -ītis, 3. -iunt.
	<i>Im.</i>



*Im.* Aud-iēbam, -iebas, -iebat ; -iebamus, -iebatis, -iebant.

*Per.* Aud-īvi, -ivisti, -ivit ; -ivimus, -ivistis, -ivērunt, *vel* -ivēre.

*Pl.* Aud-ivēram, -iveras, -iverat ; -iveramus, -iveratis, -iverant.

*Fu.* Aud-iam, -ies, -iet ; -iemus, -ietis, -ient.

### *Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Aud-iam, -ias, -iat ; -iamus, -iatis, -iant.

*Im.* Aud-īrem, -ires, -iret ; -irēmus, -iretis, -irent.

*Per.* Aud-iverim, -iveris, -iverit ; -iverimus, -iveritis, -iverint.

*Pl.* Aud-ivissem, -ivisses, -ivisset ; -ivissemus, -ivissetis, -ivissent.

*Fu.* Aud-ivero, -iveris, -iverit ; -iverimus, -iveritis, -iverent.

### *Imperative Mode.*

<sup>2.</sup>  
*Pr.* Aud-i, or -īto, <sup>3.</sup>-īto ; <sup>2.</sup>-īte, or <sup>3.</sup>-itōte, -iunto.

*Infinitive.*      *Participles.*      *Gerunds.*      *Supines.*

*Pr.* Aud-īre.      *Pr.* Aud-iens.      Aud-iendum.      1. Aud-itum.

*Per.* Aud-ivisse.      *Fu.* Aud-iturus.      Aud-iendi.      2. Aud-itu.

*Fu.* Auditurum      Aud-iendo, &c.

esse *vel* fuisse.

### PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior,      audītus,      audīri,      *To be heard.*

### *Indicative Mode.*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*Pr.* Aud-ior,      -īris,      -ītur ;      -īmur,      -īmini,      -iuntur.  
*vel* -īre,

*Im.* Aud-iēbar,      -iebaris,      -iebatur ;      -iebamur,      -iebamini,      -iebantur.  
*vel* -iebare,

*Perf.* Audītus sum *vel* fui, Auditus es *v.* fuisti, &c.

*Plu.* Auditus eram *v.* fueram, Auditus eras *v.* fueras, &c.

*Fu.* Aud-iar,      -iēris,      -ietur ;      -iemur,      -iemini,      -ientur.  
*vel* -iere,

### *Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Aud-iar,      -iaris,      -iatur ;      -iamur,      -iamini,      -iantur.  
*vel* -iare,

*Im.* Aud-īrer,      -irēris,      -iretur ;      -iremur,      -iremini,      -irentur.  
*vel* -irere,

*Perf.* Auditus sim *vel* fuerim, auditus sis *v.* fueris, &c.

*Plu.* Auditus essem *v.* fuissem, auditus esses *v.* fuisses, &c.

*Fut.* Auditus fuero, auditus fueris, &c.

*Imperative*



*Imperative Mode.*

<sup>2.</sup>  
Pr. Aud-īre, *vel* -ītor, <sup>3.</sup>-ītor; <sup>2.</sup>-īmini, <sup>3.</sup>-iuntor.

*Infinitive.*

Pr. Aud-iri.

Per. Aud-itum esse *v.* fuisse.

Fu. Aud-ītum iri.

*Participles.*

Per. Aud-ītus, -a, -um.

Fu. Aud-iendus, -a, -um.

## FORMATION of VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive.

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſe*, and *ſſem*.
3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.
4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns*, and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *dī*.

The passive voice is formed from the active in this manner:

For the 1. perf. sing. add *r* to *o*, or change *m* into *r*.

———— 2. perf. sing. change *-as* into *-āris*, or *-āre*; *-es* into *-ēris*, or *-ēre*; *-is* of the First, Second, and Third Conjugations, into *-ēris*, or *ē-re*; but *-is* of the Fourth Conjugation into *-īris*, or *-īre*.

———— 3. perf. add *ur*.

For the 1. perf. plur. change *-s* into *r*.

———— 2. perf. plur. change *-tis* into *-mīni*, and lengthen the foregoing vowel, if short.

———— 3. perf. plur. add *ur*.

A verb is commonly said to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The



The first person of the Present of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *Radical* letters ; as, *am*, in *am-o*. The rest are called the *Termination* ; as, *-abamus* in *am-abamus*.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ĕre*, or *-īre*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

### *Signification of the Tenses in the various Modes.*

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time : the other tenses express an action or passion completed ; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion ; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, or am loving ; *amabam*, I loved, did love, or was loving ; &c.

*Amavi*, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is*, have done with loving ; &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice ; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect ; thus,

#### *Indicative Mode.*

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I am or have been loved, or oftener I was loved.

*Amatus fui*, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was or had been loved.

*Amatus fueram*, I had been loved.

#### *Subjunctive Mode.*

Perfect. *Amatus sim*, I may be or may have been loved.

*Amatus fuerim*, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be or have been loved.

*Amatus fuisssem*, I might, could, would, or should have been loved ; or, I had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I shall have been loved.



The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus,

*Amaturus sum*, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, *or* I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.  
*Amatus ero*, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est*, he is *or* was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she is loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it is loved, when applied to a thing: *amati sunt*, they are loved, when applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflexion of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi*: so *amor*, and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amabar*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amatus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connection with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative. We sometimes also find one tense apparently put for another.

As the subjunctive mode usually depends on some other verb, its tenses in general express some one or other of these three circumstances, *chance*, *volition*, or *power*: thus, *si convēnīrem illum*, if I should *or* might happen to meet with him; if I would meet, *or* should incline to meet with him; or if I could meet, *or* should be able to meet with him: and so in the other tenses.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the  
I indicative,



indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet* or *fecerit*, unless he do this. *Ter.*

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do it.

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them: thus,

*Dicit me scribere*; he says *that* I write, do write, or am writing.

*Dixit me scribere*; he said *that* I wrote, did write, or was writing.

*Dicit me scripsisse*; he says *that* I wrote, did write, or have written.

*Dixit me scripsisse*; he said *that* I had written.

*Dicit me scripturum esse*; he says *that* I will write.

*Dixit me scripturum esse*; he said *that* I would write.

*Dicit me scripturum fuisse*; he says *that* I would have written.

*Dicit literas scribi*; he says *that* letters are written, writing, a-writing, or in writing.

*Dixit literas scribi*; he said *that* letters were writing, or written.

*Dicit literas scriptas esse*; he says *that* letters are or were written.

*Dicit literas scriptas fuisse*; he says *that* letters have been written.

*Dixit literas scriptas fuisse*; he said *that* letters had been written.

*Dicit literas scriptum iri*; he says *that* letters will be written.

*Dixit literas scriptum iri*; he said *that* letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis* or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore vel futurum esse ut scribant*,—*ut literæ scribantur*; I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scive fore vel futurum esse ut scriberent*,—*ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse, ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Future time, when joined with any expediency or necessity, is otherwise expressed; thus,

*Scio*



*Scio literas scribendas esse*; I know *that* letters are to be, or must be written.

*Scivi literas scribendas fuisse*; I knew *that* letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

*Note.* Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed, as in English, by the participle and the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *sum amans*, for *amo*, I am loving; *eram amans*, for *amābam*, &c. only the tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner; because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression however does not often occur.

## FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

### GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as,

*Voco, vocāvi, vocātum*, to call: so *revoco, revocāvi, revocātum*, to recall.

Except. 1\*. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pēpuli*, to beat; *repello, repuli*, never *repēpuli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do, sto, disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule; thus, *edisco, edidici*, to get by heart; *deposco, depōposci*, to demand: So, *præcurro, præcucurri*; *repungo, repupugi*.

Except. 2†. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *facio, fēci, factum*, to make; *perficio, perfēci, perfectum*, to perfect. But

\* Cùm geminat primam simplex, composita priorem Præteriti amittunt, præter *præcurro, repungo*; Quæque sibi gignunt *do, sto, cum discere posco*.

† A præsentis in I mutatum, vult E supino. Excipe *displiceo, do, go* finitaque, quæque Progenerant *babeo, sapio, salio, stutuoque*.



compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; also the compounds of *habeo*, *placeo*, *sapio*, *salio*, and *statuo*, observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

### SPECIAL RULES.

#### *First Conjugation.*

Verbs of the first conjugation have *avi* in the preterite, and *atum* in the supine; as,

*Creo, creavi, creatum*, to create; *pairo, paravi, paratum*, to prepare, — So,

*Æstimo, to value.*  
*Ambulo, to walk.*  
*Apto, to fit.*  
*Aro, to plough.*  
*Ausculto, to listen.*  
*Autumo, to suppose.*  
*Balo, to bleat.*  
*Beo, to bless.*  
*Blatéro, to babble.*  
*Carmino, to card wool.*  
*Castigo, to chastise.*  
*Castro, to cut off.*  
*Celo, to conceal.*  
*Clamo, to cry.*  
*Cogito, to think.*  
*Colo, to strain.*  
*Crëmo, to burn.*  
*Compilo, to pile up,*  
*to pillage.*  
*Dico, to dedicate.*  
*Dissipo, to scatter.*  
*Dolo, to bew.*  
*Ejulo, to wail.*  
*Erro, to wander.*  
*Fatigo, to fatigue.*  
*Festino, to hasten.*  
*Flagito, to dun.*  
*Flagro, to be on fire.*  
*Flo, to blow.*  
*Foro, to bore.*  
*Fragro, to smell sweet-*  
*ly.*  
*Frio, to crumble.*

*Guberno, to govern.*  
*Gusto, to taste.*  
*Halo, to breathe.*  
*Hio, to gape.*  
*Jento, to breakfast.*  
*Indago, to search.*  
*Inquino, to pollute.*  
*Inspico, to sharpen at*  
*the end.*  
*Instigo, to push on.*  
*Intercalo, to insert.*  
*Invito, to invite.*  
*Irrito, to enrage.*  
*Jubilo, to shout for*  
*joy.*  
*Jurgo, to chide.*  
*Lallo, to sing, as a*  
*nurse to a child.*  
*Lanio, to tear.*  
*Latro, to bark.*  
*Lëgo, to send away.*  
*Libo, to taste.*  
*Ligo, to bind.*  
*Lito, to appease.*  
*Luco, & -or, to*  
*wrestle.*  
*Luxo, to loosen.*  
*Mando, to commit.*  
*Mano, to flow.*  
*Meo, to go.*  
*Migro, to remove.*  
*Monstro, to bew.*  
*Muto, to change.*

*Mulco, to beat.*  
*Narro, to tell.*  
*Nëgo, to deny.*  
*No, to swim.*  
*Occo, to harrow.*  
*Opto, to wish.*  
*Orno, to adorn.*  
*Oro, to beg.*  
*Palpo, to stroke.*  
*Pecco, to sin.*  
*Placo, to appease.*  
*Ploro, to bewail.*  
*Porto, to carry.*  
*Postulo, to demand.*  
*Protelo, to chase a-*  
*way.*  
*Purgo, to cleanse.*  
*Puto, to think.*  
*Privo, to deprive.*  
*Propino, to drink to*  
*one.*  
*Rigo, to water.*  
*Rogo, to ask.*  
*Runco, to weed.*  
*Screo, to hawk, or*  
*retch in spitting.*  
*Sëdo, to allay.*  
*Sibilo, to hiss.*  
*Servo, to keep.*  
*Spëro, to hope.*  
*Spïro, to breathe.*  
*Stipo, to stuff, to*  
*guard.*

*Strangulo,*



Strangŭlo, to <i>stifle</i> .	Tolĕro, to <i>bear</i> .	Vĭto, to <i>skun</i> .
Sŭdo, to <i>sweat</i> .	Vacillo, to <i>waver</i> .	Vitŭpĕro, to <i>blame</i> .
Temĕro, to <i>defile</i> .	Văco, to <i>want, to be</i>	Vŏro, to <i>devour</i> .
Tempĕro, to <i>temper</i> .	at <i>leisure</i> .	Vŏco, to <i>call</i> .
Titillo, to <i>tickle</i> .	Vestĭgo, to <i>search for</i> .	Vindĭco, to <i>claim</i> .
Titŭbo, to <i>stagger</i> .	Vibro, to <i>brandish</i> .	Vŏlo, to <i>fly</i> .

Except. 1. *Do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre*, to give : so *venundo*, to sell ; *circundo*, to surround ; *pessundo*, to overthrow ; *satisdo*, to give surety ; *venundĕdi, venundătum, venundăre, &c.* The other compounds of *do* are of the Third Conjugation.

*Sto, stĕti, statum*, to stand. Its compounds have *stĭti, stĭtum*, and oftener *stătum* ; as, *præsto, præstĭti, præstĭtum*, or *præstătum*, to excel. So *ex-, ad-, con-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto*.

Except. 2. *Lăvo, lăvi, lŏtum, lautum, lăvătum*, to wash. *Pŏto, pŏtavi, pŏtum*, or *pŏtătum*, to drink. *Jŭvo, jŭvi, jŭtum*, to help. So, *adjŭvo*.

Except. 3. *Cŭbo, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum*, to ly. So *ac-, ex-, oc-, re-cŭbo*. The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the Third Conjugation.

*Dŏmo, dŏmui, dŏmĭtum*, to subdue. So *e-, per-dŏmo*.

*Sŏno, sŏnui, sŏnĭtum*, to found. So *as-, circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-sŏno*.

*Tŏno, tŏnui, tŏnĭtum*, to thunder. So *at-, circum-, in-, superin-, re-tŏno*.

*Vĕto, vĕtui, vĕtĭtum*, to forbid.

*Crĕpo, crĕpui, crĕpĭtum*, to make a noise. So *con-, in-, per-, re-crĕpo* : *dis-crĕpo* has rather *dis-crĕpăvi*.

Except. 4. *Frĭco, frĭcui, frĭctum*, to rub. So *as-, circum-, con-, de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-frĭco*.

*Sĕco, sĕcui, sĕctum*, to cut. So *circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-sĕco*.

*Nĕco, nĕcui, or nĕcavi, nĕcătum*, to kill. So *inter-, e-nĕco* : but these have sometimes *ectum* ; *enectum, inter-nectum*.

*Mĭco, mĭcui, —* to glitter. So *inter-, pro-mĭco*. *E-mĭco* has *emĭcui, emĭcătum* ; *dimĭco, dimĭcăvi, dimĭcătum*, rarely *dimĭcui*, to fight.

Except. 5. These three want both pret. and sup. *lăbo*, to fall or faint ; *lexo*, to bind ; and *plĭco*, to fold.

*Plĭco*, compounded with a noun, or with the preposi-



tions *re, sub*, has *āvi, ātum*; as, *duplīco, duplicavi, duplicatum*, to double. So *multi-, sup-, re-plīco*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *itum*; as, *applīco, applicui, applicitum*, or *-āvi, ātum*, to apply. So *im-, com-, plīco* *Explīco*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui, explicitum*; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *explicāvi, explicātum*.

### Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *itum*; as,

*Hābeo, habui, habitum*, to have; *prohibeo, prohibui, prohibitum*, to forbid. So *dēbeo*, to owe; *mēreo*, to deserve; *mōneo*, to advise; *præbeo*, to afford; *terreo*, to terrify; *dirībeo*, to count over, to distribute.

Except. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

*Jūbeo, jussi, jussum*, to order. So *fide-jūbeo*.

*Sorbeo, sorbui, sorptum*, to sup. So *ab-, ex-, re-sorbeo*.

*Dōceo, docui, doctum*, to teach. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, sub-dōceo*.

*Misceo, miscui, mistum*, or *mixtum*, to mix. So *ad-, com-, im-, inter, per-, re-misceo*.

*Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum*, to stroak. So *ad-, circum-, com-, de-, per-, re-mulceo*.

*Lūceo, luxi, —* to shine. So *al-, circum-, col-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, or pel-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, trans-lūceo*.

Except. 2. The following verbs in *DEO*:

*Prandeo, prandi, pransum*, to dine.

*Vīdeo, vīdi, vīsum*, to see. So *in-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-vīdeo*.

*Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum*, to sit. So, *af-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, ob-, pos-, præ-, re-, sub-sēdeo*: *Circumsēdeo*, or *circumsēdeo, supersēdeo*.

*Strīdeo, strīdi, —* to make a noise.

*Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum*, to hang. So *de-, im-, pro-, super-pendeo*.

*Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum*, to bite. So *ad-, com-, de-, ob-, præ-, re-mordeo*.

*Spondeo,*



*Spondeo, spōpondi, sponsum*, to promise. So *de-*, *re-*, *spondeo*.

*Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum*, to clip. So *at-*, *circum-*, *de-tondeo*; but the compounds do not double the first syllable in the preterite; thus, *attondi*, &c.

*Rideo, rīsi, rīsum*, to laugh. So *ar-*, *de-*, *ir-*, *sub-rideo*.

*Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum*, to advise. So *dis-*, *per-suādeo*.

*Ardeo, arsi, arsum*, to burn. So *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-ardeo*.

Except. 3. The following verbs in *GEO* :

*Augeo, auxi, auctum*, to increase. So *ad-*, *ex-augeo*.

*Lūgeo, luxi, —* to mourn. So *e-*, *pro-*, *sub-lugeo*.

*Frīgeo, frixi, —* to be cold. So *per*, *re-frīgeo*.

*Tergeo, tersi, tersum*, to wipe. So *abs-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-tergeo*.

*Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum*, or *mulctum*, to milk. So *e-*, *im-mulgeo*.

*Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum*, to grant, to indulge.

*Urgeo, urxi,\* —* to press. So *ad-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *sub-*, *super urgeo*.

*Fulgeo, fulsi*, to shine. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *super-fulgeo*.

*Turgeo, tursi, —* to swell.

*Algeo, alsi, —* to be cold.

Except. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO* :

*Vieo, viēvi, viētum*, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

*Cieo, (cīvi) cītum*, to rouse. So *ac-*, *con-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-cieo*. *Cīvi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.

*Fleo, flēvi, flētum*, to weep. So *af-*, *de-fleo*.

*Compleo, complēvi, complētum*, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo*; *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *adim-*, *op-*, *re-*, *sup-pleo*.

*Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum*, to destroy.

*Oleo*, to smell, has *ōlui, ōlītum*. So likewise its compounds which have a similar signification; *ob-*, *per-*, *red-*, *sub-ōleo*.

But such of the compounds as have a different significa-

\* ————— Viduata supinis

Si capiunt *urget*, cum *fulget*, *turget*, & *alget*.



tion, make *ēvi* and *ētum*; thus, *exōleo*, *exōlēvi*, *exōlētum*, to fade. So *in-*, *ob-*ōleo. *Abōleo*, to abolish, has *abōlēvi*, *abōlītum*; and *adōleo*, to grow up, to burn, *adōlēvi*, *adultum*.

Except. 5. Several verbs in *NEO*, *QUEO*, *REO*, and *SEO*:

*Māneo*, *mansī*, *mansum*, to stay. So *per-*, *re-māneo*.

*Neo*, *nēvi*, *nētum*, to spin. So *per-neo*.

*Tēneo*, *tēnui*, *tentum*, to hold. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *re-*, *sus-tīneo*. But *attīneo*, *pertīneo*, are not used in the supine; and seldom *abstīneo*.

*Torqueo*, *torṣi*, *tortum*, to throw. Thus, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *re-torqueo*.

*Hæreo*, *hæsi*, *hæsum*, to stick. Thus, *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *sub-hæreo*.

*Torreo*, *torrui*, *tostum*, to roast. So *extorreo*.

*Censeo*, *censui*, *censum*, to judge. So *ac-*, *per-*, *re-*, *suc-censeo*.

Except. 6. Verbs in *VEO*, have *vi*, *tum*; as, *mōveo*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, to move. So *vōveo*, to vow.

*Fāveo*, to favour; has *fāvi*, *fautum*; and *cāveo*, to be-ware of, *cāvi*, *cautum*. So *præ-cāveo*.

Neuter verbs in *veo*, want the supine; as, *pāveo*, *pāvi*, to be afraid.

*Ferveo*, to boil, makes *ferbui*. So *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-ferveo*.

*Connīveo*, to wink, has *connīvi* and *connixi*.

Except. 7\*. Neuter verbs of the second conjugation, which have *ui* in the preterite, want the supine; as, *āreo*, *āruī*, to be dry.

In like manner,

*Acco*, to be sour.

*Albeo*, to be white.

*Candeo*, to be white.

*Calleo*, to be hard.

*Egeo*, to want.

*Emīneo*, to stand a-  
bove others.

*Flacceo*, to wither.

*Flōreo*, to flourish.

*Fœteo*, to stink.

*Frendeo*, to gnash the  
teeth.

*Frondeo*, to bear  
leaves.

*Horreo*, to be rough.

*Hūmeo*, to be wet.

*Immīneo*, to hang o-  
ver.

*Langueo*, to languish.

*Līqueo*, -cui, to be  
clear.

\* Quod dat UI neutrum, *timeo*, *filēoque*, supina  
Nulla dabunt. *Valeo*, *placeo*, *caret*, & *licet* aufer,  
*Paret*, item *jaceo*, *caleo*, *noceo*, *doleoque*;  
*Queis* coalet, latet atque meret sociabis, oletque.



Măceo, to be lean.	Putreo, to rot.	Splendo, to shine.
Mădeo, to be wet.	Ranceo, to be mouldy.	Tēpeo, to be warm.
Marceo, to wither.	Rīgeo, to be stiff.	Torpeo, to be benumbed.
Mūceo, to be mouldy.	Rubeo, to be red.	Tūmeo, to swell.
Nīteo, to shine.	Squaleo, to be foul.	Vīgeo, to be strong.
Palleo, to be pale.	Sordeo, to be nasty.	Vīreo, to be green.
Pāteo, to be open.	Stūdeo, to favour.	
Pūteo, to stink.	Stūpeo, to be amazed.	

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Vāleo*, to be in health; *plāceo*, to please; *cāreo*, to want; *pāreo*, to obey; *jāceo*, to ly; *cāleo*, to be warm; *nōceo*, to hurt; *dōleo*, to be grieved; *coāleo*, to grow together; *ōleo*, to smell; *līceo*, which in the active signifies to be valued, to be lawful; and what is singular, in the passive, to value, or bid a price; *lāteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, as likewise do those of *taceo*, to conceal; thus, *delīteo*, *delītui*; *contīceo*, *contīcui*, &c.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine\*: *Tīmeo*, to fear; *sīleo*, to conceal; *arceo*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo*, *exercui*, *exercitum*, to exercise. So *co-erceo*.

Except. 8 †. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo*, to suck milk; *līveo*, to be black and blue; *scāteo*, to abound; *renīdeo*, to shine; *māreo*, to be sorrowful; *āveo*, to desire; *polleo*, to be able; *flāveo*, to be yellow; *denſeo*, to grow thick; *glabreo*, to be smooth or bare; and *cēveo*, to wag the tail.

### Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

#### IO.

1. *Fācio*, *fēci*, *factum*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a*: *are-*, *cale-*, *made-*, *tepe-*, *bene-*,

\* *Arceo* quod simplex nescit, dant nata supinum: Quod retinent *taceo*, *lateo*, sobolique recusant.

† Nil, formant *lactet*, *livet*, *scateoque renidet*, *Maret*, *avet*, *pollet*, *flavet*, cum *denſeo* *glabret*.



*male-*, *satis-facio*, &c. But those which change *a* into *i*, have *ectum*; as, *afficio*, *affēci*, *effectum*. So *con-*, *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *suf-ficio*.

*Jacio*, *jēci*, *jactum*, to throw. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *superin-*, *tra-jicio*; in the supine *-ectum*.

The compounds of *spicio* and *lacio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi* and *ectum*; as, *aspicio*, *aspexi*, *aspectum*, to behold. So *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *intro-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *su-spicio*.

*Allicio*, *allexi*, *allectum*, to allure. So *il-*, *pel-licio*: but *elicio*, to draw out, has *elīcui*, *elīcītum*.

2. *Fodio*, *fōdi*, *fossūm*, to dig. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *trans-fodio*.

*Fugio*, *fūgi*, *fugitum*, to fly. So *au-*, (for *ab-*), *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *per-*, *pro*, *re-*, *suf-*, *subter-*, *trans-fugio*.

3. *Cāpio*, *cēpi*, *captum*, to take. So *ac-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-cīpio*, (in the supine *-ceptum*;) and *ante-cāpio*.

*Rāpio*, *rāpui*, *raptum*, to pull or snatch. So *ab-*, *ar-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *præ-*, *pro*, *sur-rīpio*; *rīpui*, *-reptum*.

*Sāpio*, *sāpui*, — to favour, to be wise. So *con-*, *de-*, *re-sīpio*.

*Cūpio*, *cupīvi*, *cupītum*, to desire. So *con-*, *dis*, *per-cūpio*.

4. *Pārio*, *pēpēri*, *paritum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

*Quatio*, *quassi*, *quassum*, to shake: but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi*, *cussum*; as, *concūtio*, *concussi*, *concussum*. So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-*, *reper-*, *suc-cūtio*.

## U O.

Verbs in *uo* have *ui* and *ūtum*; as,

*Arguo*, *argui*, *argūtum*, to reprove: — So,

*Acuo*, to sharpen.

*Minuo*, to lessen.

*Sternuo*, to sneeze.

*Exuo*, to put off cloaths.

*Spuo*, to spit.

*Suo*, to sew or stitch.

*Induo*, to put on cloaths.

*Statuo*, to place, to ordain.

*Tribuo*, to give.

*Imbuo*, to moisten, to season.

Except. 1. *Fluo*, *fluxi*, *fluxum*, to flow. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præter-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *subter-*, *super-*, *trans fluo*.

*Struo*,



*Struo, struxi, structum*, to put in order, to build. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, sub-, super-**struo*.

Except. 2. *Luo, lui, luitum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *abluo, ui, ūtum*, to purify. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pro-, sub-luo*.

*Ruo, rui, ruitum*, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *diruo, dirui, dirūtum*, to overthrow. So *e-, ob-, pro-, sub-ruo*\*. *Corruo* and *irruo* want the supine; as likewise do *metuo*, to fear; *pluo*, to rain; *ingruo*, to assail; *respuo*, to reject; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*.

### BO.

Verbs in *bo* have *bi* and *bitum*; as, *Bibo, bibi, bibitum*, to drink. So *glūbo*, to strip, to flay.

Except. 1. *Scrībo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, supra-, tran-scribo*.

*Nūbo, nupsi, nuptum*, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ob-nūbo*. Instead of *nupsi* we often use *nupta sum*.

Except. 2. The compounds of *cubo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accūbui, accūbitum*, to sit down at table. So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo*.

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi*, to scratch; *lambo, lambi*, to lick. So *ad-, circum-, de-, præ-lambo*.

### CO.

1. *Dīco, dixi, dictum*, to say. So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-dīco*.

*Dūco, duxi, ductum*, to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sub-, tra-, or transf-dūco*.

2. *Vinco, vīci, victum*, to overcome. So *con-, de-, e-, per-, re-vinco*.

\* Nulla supina dabunt *metuo, pluo, congruo*, sicut *Annuo, cum sociis; quibus ingruo, respuo* junges.



*Parco, pēperci, parsum*, feldom *parsi, parsitum*, to spare. So *com-parco*, or *com-perco*, which is feldom used.

*Ico, ici, ictum*, to strike.

### SCO.

Verbs in *sco* change *sco* into *vi, tum*; as, *Cresco, crēvi, crētum*, to grow. *Nosco, nōvi, nōtum*, to know, future participle, *nosciturus*.

Except. 1. *Agnosco, agnōvi, agnitum*, to own; *cognosco, cognōvi, cognitum*, to know. So *recognosco*.

*Pasco, pāvi, pastum*, to feed. So *com-, de-pasco*.

Except. 2. The following verbs want the supine.

*Disco, didīci*, to learn. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, præ-disco*.

*Posco, pōposci*, to demand. So *ap-, de-, ex-, re-posco*.

*Compesco, compescui*, to stop or restrain. So *dispesco, dispescui*, to separate.

Except. 3. *Glisco*, to grow, and likewise inceptive verbs want both preterite and supine; as, *aresco*, to become dry. But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives; as, *ardeſco, arsi, arsum*, from *ardeo*.

### DO.

Verbs in *do* have *di, sum*; as,

*Scando, scandi, scansum*, to climb; *cūdo, cūdi, cūsum*, to forge; *accendo, accendi, accensum*, to kindle. So *mando*, to chew; *prehendo*, to take hold of; *ēdo*, to eat; *defendo*, to defend.

Except. 1. *dīvido, dīvīsi, divīsum*, to divide.

*Rādo, rāsi, rāsum*, to shave. So *ab-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, inter-, præ-, sub-rādo*.

*Claudo, clausi, clausum*, to close. So *circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, præ-, re-, se-clūdo*.

*Plaudo, plausi, plausum*, to clap hands for joy. So *ap-, circum-plaudo*: also *com-, dis-, ex-, sup-plōdo*.

*Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum*, to play. So *ab-, al-, col-, de-, e-, il-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-, re-lūdo*.

*Trūdo, trūsi, trūsum*, to thrust. So *ab-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, pro-, re-trūdo*.

*Lædo,*



*Lædo, læsi, læsum*, to hurt. So *al-*, *col-*, *e-*, *il-līdo*.

*Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum*, to gnaw. So *ab-*, *ar-*, *circum*, *cor-*, *de-*, *e-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-rōdo*.

*Vādo*, to go, wants both preterite and supine: but its compounds have *si*, *sum*; as, *invādo, invāsi, invāsum*, to invade, or fall upon. So *circum-*, *e-*, *super-vādo*.

*Cēdo, cessi, cessum*, to yield. So *abf-*, *ac-*, *ante-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *sc-*, *suc-cēdo*.

Except. 2. *Pando, pandi, passum*, and sometimes *pan-sum*, to open, to spread. So *dis-*, *ex-*, *op-*, *præ-*, *re-pando*.

*Comēdo, comēdi, comēsum*, or *comestum*, to eat. But *ēdo* itself and the rest of its compounds have always *ēsum*; as, *ad-*, *amb-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *sub-*, *super-ēdo*.

*Fundo, fūdi, fūsum*, to pour forth. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter*, *of-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *suf*, *super-*, *superin-*, *trans-fundo*.

*Scindo, scīdi, scissum*, to cut. So *af-*, *circum*, *con*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *tran-scindo*.

*Findo, fīdi, fissum*, to cleave. So *con-*, *dis-*, *in-findo*.

Except. 3. *Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum*, and sometimes *tū-sum*, to beat. The compounds have *tūdi*, *tūsum*; as, *con-tundo, contūdi, contūsum*, to bruise. So *ex-*, *ob-*, *per*, *re-tundo*.

*Cādo, cēcīdi, cāsum*, to fall\*. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, ~~in-~~, *inter-*, *pro-*, *suc-cīdo*: except *incīdo, incīdi, incāsum*, to fall in; *recīdo, recīdi, recāsum*, to fall back; and *occīdo, occīdi, occāsum*, to fall down.

*Cædo, cēcīdi, cæsum*, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accīsum*, to cut about. So *abf-*, *con-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suc-cīdo*.

*Tendo, tētendi, tensum*, or *tentum*, to stretch out. So *et-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *pro-tendo*. But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo*, which has commonly *ostensum*.

*Pēdo, pēpēdi, peditum*, to break wind backwards. So *op-pēdo*.

*Pendo, pēpendi, pensum*, to weigh. So *ap-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sus-pendo*.

\* ————— Nata supinum  
(*Incido si demas, recido, simul occido*) spernunt.



Except. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dīdi*, and *dītum*; as, *abdo*, *abdīdi*, *abdītum*, to hide. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *trā-do*: also *decon-*, *recon-do*; and *coad-*, *superad-do*; and *deper-*, *disper-do*. To these add *crēdo*, *crēdīdi*, *crēdītum*, to believe; *vendo*, *vendīdi*, *vendītum*, to sell. *Abscondo*, to hide, has *abscondi*, *abscondītum*, rarely *abscondīdi*.

Except 5. These three want the supine: *strīdo*, *strīdi*, to creak; *rūdo*, *rūdi*, to bray like an ass; and *sīdo*, *sīdi*, to sink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consīdo*, *consēdi*, *confessum*, to sit down. So *af-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sub-sīdo*.

### GO, GUO.

Verbs in *go*, or *guo*, change *go* or *guo* into *xi* and *ctum*; as,

*Rēgo*, *rexī*, *rectum*, to govern. So

*Cingo*, to surround.

*Jungo*, to join.

*Lingo*, to lick.

*Mungo*, to wipe the nose.

*Plango*, to beat, to lament.

*Stingo*, or *-uo*, to extinguish.

*Sūgo*, to suck.

*Tingo*, or *-uo*, to dip, or dye.

*Ungo*, or *-uo*, to anoint.

*Flīgo*, to dash, or beat upon.

*Tēgo*, to cover;

And their compounds.

Except. 1. *Surgo*, to rise, has *surrexi*, *surrectum*. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-surgo*.

*Pergo*, *perrexi*, *perrectum*, to go forward.

*Stringo*, *strinxi*, *strictum*, to bind, to strain. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-stringo*.

*Fingo*, *finxi*, *factum*, to feign. So *af-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *re-fingo*.

*Pingo*, *pinxi*, *pectum*, to paint. So *ap-*, *de-pingo*.

Except. 2. *Frango*, *frēgi*, *fractum*, to break. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-fringo*.

*Ago*, *ēgi*, *actum*, to do, to drive. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *ex-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *trans-*, *transad-igo*: and *circum-*, *per-āgo*; *cōgo*, for *coago*.

These three compounds of *āgo* want the supine: *satāgo*, *satēgi*, to be busy about a thing; *prodīgo*, *prodēgi*, to lavish, or spend riotously; *dēgo*, for *deāgo*, *dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Ambīgo*, to doubt, also wants the preterite.

*Lēgo*, *lēgi*, *lectum*, to gather, to read. So *al-*, *per-*, *præ-*



*præ-, re-, sub-lēgo* : also *col-, de-, e-, recol-, se-līgo*, which change *e* into *i*.

*Dilīgo*, to love, has *dilexi, dilectum*. So *neglīgo*, to neglect ; and *intellīgo*, to understand.

Except. 3. *Tango, tētīgi, tactum*, to touch. So *at-, con-, ob-, per-tingo*.

*Pungo, pŭpŭgi, punctum*, to prick. The compounds have *punxi* ; as, *compungo, compunxi, compunctum*. So *dis-, ex-, inter-pungo* : but *repungo* has *repunxi* or *repŭpŭgi*.

*Pango, panxi, pactum*, to fix, to drive in, to compose : or *pēpīgi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *pāgo*, to bargain, for which we use *paciscor*. The compounds of *pango*, have *pēgi* ; as, *compingo, compēgi, compactum*, to put together. So *im-, op-, sup-pingo*.

Except. 4. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum*, to spread. So *ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-spergo*.

*Mergo, merſi, merſum*, to dip, or plunge. So *de-, e-, im-, sub-mergo*.

*Tergo, terſi, terſum*, to wipe or clean. So *abſ-, de-, ex-, per-tergo*.

*Fīgo, fixi, fixum*, to fix or fasten. So *af-, con-, de-, in-, of-, per-, præ-, re-, ſuſ-, tranſ-fīgo*.

*Frīgo, frixi, frixum, and frictum*, to fry.

Except. 5. These three want the supine : *clango, clanxi*, to sound a trumpet ; *ningo* or *ninguo, ninxi*, to snow ; *ango, anxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline or lie towards, wants both preterite and supine. So *e-, de-, in-vergo*.

## HO, JO.

1. *Trāho, traxi, tractum*, to draw. So *abſ-, at-, circum-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-trāho*.

*Vēho, vexi, vectum*, to carry. So *a-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, tranſ-vēho*.

2. *Mejo, or mingo, minxi, miſtum*, to make water. So *immejo*.

## LO.

Verbs in *lo* have commonly *lui* in the preterite, but form the supine variously ; thus,

1. *Cōlo, cōlui, cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So *ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-cōlo* : and likewise *occŭlo, occului, occultum*, to hide.



*Consũlo, consului, consultum*, to advise, to consult.

*Alo, alui, alitum*, or contracted *altum*, to nourish.

*Mũlo, molui, molitum*, to grind. So *com-*, *e-*, *per-mũlo*.

The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-*, *ex-*, *præ-cello, -cellui*, to excel. *Per-cello*, to astonish, has *percũli, perculsum*.

*Pello, pẽpũli, pulsum*, to thrust. So *ap-*, *af-*, *com-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-pello*.

*Fũllo, fẽfelli, falsum*, to deceive. But *refello, refelli*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello, velli*, or *vulsi, vulsum*, to pull or pinch. So *a-*, *con-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-vello*. But *de-*, *di-*, *per-vello*, have rather *veli*.

*Sallo, falli, falsum*, to salt. *Psallo, psalli*, — to play on a musical instrument.

*Tollo*, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *sustũli* and *sublũtum*. *Extollo* has *extũli, elũtum*; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

### MO.

Verbs in *mo* have *ui* and *ũtum*; as,

*Gẽmo, gẽmui, gẽmitum*, to groan. So *Frẽmo*, to rage; *vũmo*, to vomit.

Except. 1. *Dẽmo, dempsi, demptum*, to take away.

*Prũmo, prompsi, promptum*, to bring out. So *de-*, *ex-*, *prũmo*.

*Sũmo, sumpsi, sumptum*, to take. So *ab-*, *af-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *tran-sũmo*.

*Cũmo, compsi, comptum*, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p*; as, *sumsi, sumtum*; *demsi, demtum*, &c.

Except 2. *Emo, ěmi, emptum*, to buy. So *ad-*, *dir-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *red-ĩmo* and *co-ẽmo*.

*Prẽm-, pressi, pressum*, to press. So *ap-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *op-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sup-prĩmo*.

*Trẽmo, trẽmui*, to tremble, wants the supine. So *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-trẽmo*.

### NO.

Verbs in *no* form the preterite and supine variously; thus,

1. *Pũno,*



1. *Pōno, pōsui, pōsitum*, to put or place. So *ap-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *op-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *se-*, *sup-*, *super-*, *superim-*, *trans-pōno*.

*Gigno, gēnui, gēnitum*, to beget. So *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-gigno*.

*Cāno, cēcini, cantum*, to sing. But the compounds have *cinui* and *centum*; as, *accino, accinui, accentum*, to sing in concert. So *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *suc-cino*; *oc-cino* and *oc-cāno*; *re-cino* and *re-cāno*.

*Temno, tempsi, temptum*, to despise. So *contemno*: But the preterite and supine of the simple verb are scarcely used.

2. *Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum*, to disdain or slight. So *desperno*.

*Sterno, strāvi, strātum*, to lay flat, to strow. So *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *sub-sterno*.

*Sino, sivi, or sii, situm*, to permit. So *desino, desivi*, oftener *desii, desitum*, to leave off.

*Lino, lēvi, or lēvi, litum*, to anoint or daub. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *de-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *subter-*, *super-*, *superil-lino*.

*Cerno, crēvi, seldom crētum*, to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *se-cerno*.

## PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum*; as,

*Carpo, carpsi, carptum*, to pluck. So

*Clepo, to steal.*

*Rēpo, to creep.*

*Scalpo, to scratch or engrave.*

*Sculpo, to grave, or carve.*

*Serpo, to creep.*

And their compounds.

Except. 1. *Strēpo, strēpsi, strēpitum*, to make a noise. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-strēpo*.

Except. 2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum*, to break. So *ab-*, *cor-*, *di-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ir-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-rumpo*.

There are only two simple verbs ending in *quo*, viz.

*Cōquo, coxi, coctum*, to boil. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-cōquo*.

*Linguo, liqui, —* to leave. The compounds have *lictum*; as, *relinquo, reliqui, relictum*, to forsake. So *de-*, and *dere-linguo*.



## RO.

Verbs in *ro* cannot be reduced to any certain rule.

1. *Quæro* makes *quæsi*vi, *quæsi*tum, to seek. So *ac*-, *an*-, *con*-, *dis*-, *ex*-, *in*-, *per*-, *re*-*quiro*.

*Tæro*, *trivi*, *tritum*, to wear, to bruise. So *at*-, *con*-, *de*-, *dis*-, *ex*-, *in*-, *ob*-, *per*-, *pro*-, *sub*-*tæro*.

*Verro*, *verri*, *versum*, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So *a*-, *con*-, *de*-, *e*-, *præ*-, *re*-*verro*.

*Uro*, *ussi*, *ustum*, to burn. So *ad*-, *amb*-, *comb*-, *de*-, *ex*-, *in*-, *per*-, *sub*-*ūro*.

*Gæro*, *gessi*, *gestum*, to carry. So *ag*-, *con*-, *di*-, *in*-, *pro*-, *re*-, *sug*-*gæro*.

2. *Curro*, *cūcurri*, *cursum*, to run. So *ac*-, *con*-, *de*-, *dis*-, *ex*-, *in*-, *oc*-, *per*-, *præ*-, *pro*-*curro*, which sometimes double the first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *ac*-*curri*, or *accūcurri*, &c. *Circum*-, *re*-, *suc*-, *trans*-*curro*, hardly ever redouble the first syllable.

3. *Særo*, *sēvi*, *sātum*, to sow. The compounds which signify *planting* or *sowing*, have *sēvi*, *sītum*; as, *consæro*, *consēvi*, *consītum*, to plant together. So *as*-, *circum*-, *de*-, *dis*-, *in*-, *inter*-, *ob*-, *pro*-, *re*-, *sub*-, *tran*-*særo*.

*Særo*, to knit, had antiently *særu*i, *sertum*, which its compounds still retain; as, *assæro*, *asserui*, *assertum*, to claim. So *con*-, *circum*-, *de*-, *dis*-, *edis*-, *ex*-, *in*-, *inter*-*særo*.

4. *Fūro*, to be mad, wants both preterite and supine.

## SO.

Verbs in *so* have *sīvi* and *sītum*; as,

*Arcesso*, *arcessi*vi, *arcessi*tum, to call, or send for. So *ca*-*pesso*, to take; *face*so, to do, to go away; *lace*so, to provoke.

Except. 1. *Vīso*, *vīsi*, — to go to see, to visit. So *in*-, *re*-*viso*. *Incesso*, *incessi*, — to attack.

Except. 2. *Depso*, *depfui*, *depstum*, to knead. So *con*-, *per*-*depso*.

*Pinso*, *pinsui*, or *pin*si, *pinsum*, *pistum*, or *pinsi*tum, to bake.



TO.

Verbs in *to* form the preterite and supine variously.

1. *Flecto* has *flexi*, *flexum*, to bow. So *circum-*, *de-*, *in-*, *re-*, *retro-flecto*.

*Plecto*, *plexi*, and *plexui*, *plexum*, to plait. So *implecto*.

*Necto*, *nexi*, and *nexui*, *nexum*, to tie or knit. So *an-*, *con-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *sub-necto*.

*Pecto*, *pexi*, and *pexui*, *pexum*, to dress or comb. So *de-*, *ex-*, *re pecto*.

2. *Mecto*, *messui*, *messum*, to reap, mow, or cut down. So *de-*, *e-*, *præ-mecto*.

3. *Pecto*, *pētīvi*, *pētītum*, to seek, to pursue. So *ap-*, *com-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *op-*, *re-*, *sup-pecto*.

*Mitto*, *mīsi*, *missum*, to send. So *a-*, *ad-*, *com-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *o-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *præter*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *trans-mitto*.

*Verto*, *verti*, *versum*, to turn. So *a-*, *ad-*, *animad-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *præter-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *trans-vertō*.

*Sterto*, *stertui*, — to snore. So *de-sterto*.

4. *Sisto*, an active verb, to stop, has *stīti*, *stātum*: but *sisto*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *stēti*, *statum*, like *sto*. The compounds have *stīti*, and *stītum*; as, *assistō*, *astīti*, *astītum*, to stand by. So *ab-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sub-sisto*. But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vivo*, *vixi*, *victum*, to live. So *ad-*, *con-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *super-vivo*.

*Solvo*, *solvi*, *solūtum*, to loose. So *ab-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *re-solvo*.

*Volvo*, *volvi*, *volūtum*, to roll. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-volvo*.

2. *Texo*, the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*, has *texui*, *textum*, to weave. So *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-texo*.



## Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *īvi*, and the supine in *ītum* ; as,

*Mūnio, mūnīvi, mūnitum*, to fortify. So

*Condio, to season.*

*Crōcio, to croak.*

*Dormio, to sleep.*

*Gannio, to yelp, or  
whine.*

*Garrio, to prat.*

*Glutio, to swallow.*

*Grunnio, to grunt.*

*Ligūrio, to eat deli-  
ciously, to slabber up.*

*Hinnio, to neigh.*

*Mūgio, to bellow.*

*Mūtio, to mutter.*

*Nutrio, to nourish.*

*Pavio, to beat.*

*Pōlio, to polish.*

*Prurio, to itch, to  
tickle.*

*Rūgio, to roar like a  
lion.*

*Sarrio, to weed, to  
rake.*

*Tinnio, to tinkle.*

*Vāgio, to cry or  
squeal as a child.*

*Vestio, to clothe.*

*Redimio, to bind.*

*Sāgio, to foresee, or  
guess at.*

*Suffio, to perfume.*

Except. 1. *Singultio, singultīvi, singultum*, to sob.

*Sepelio, sepelīvi, sepultum*, to bury.

*Venio, vēni, ventum*, to come. So *ad-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *contra-*, *de-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-venio*.

*Veneo, vēnii, —* to be sold.

*Sālio, sālui, and sālīi, saltum*, to leap. The compounds have commonly *sīlui*, sometimes *sīlii* or *sīlīvi*, and *sultum* ; as, *transilio, transīlui, transīlii, and transīlivi, transfultum*, to leap over. So *ab-*, *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-silio*.

Except. 2. *Amicio* has *amicui*, seldom *amixi, amictum*, to cover or clothe.

*Vincio, vinxi, vincitum*, to tie. So *circum-*, *de-*, *e-*, *re-vincio*.

*Sancio, sanxi, sanctum* ; and *sancīvi, sancitum*, to establish or ratify.

Except. 3. *Cambio* has *campsi, campsum*, to change money.

*Sēpio, sep̄si, septum*, to hedge or inclose. So *circum-*, *dis-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-sēpio*.

*Haurio, hausi, haustum, rarely haufum*, to draw out, to empty. So *de-*, *ex-haurio*.

*Sentio, sensi, sensum*, to feel, to perceive. So *af-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *sub-sentio*.

*Raucio, rausi, rausum*, to be hoarse.

Except.



Except. 4. *Sarcio, farsī, fartum*, to mend or repair. So *ex-*, *re-sarcio*.

*Farcio, farsī, fartum*, to cram. So *con-fercio, ef-fercio*, or *ef-farcio*; *in-fercio*, or *in-farcio*; *re-fercio*.

*Fulcio, fulsi, fultum*, to prop or uphold. So *con-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *suf-fulcio*.

Except. 5. The compounds of *pārio*, have *pērui, pertum*; as, *apērio, apērui, apertum*, to open. So *opērio*, to shut. But *compērio* has *compēri, compertum*, to know a thing for certain. *Repērio, repēri, repertum*, to find.

Except. 6\*. The following verbs want the supine. *Cēcūtio, cēcūtīvi*, to be dim-sighted. *Gestio, gestīvi*, to shew one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glōcio, glōcīvi*, to cluck or keckle as a hen. *Dementio, dementīvi*, to be mad. *Ineptio, ineptīvi*, to play the fool. *Prosilio, prosilui*, to leap forth. *Ferōcio, ferōcīvi*, to be fierce.

*Fērio*, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So *referio*.

## DEPONENT and COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as,

*Lōquor*, I speak; *mōrior*, I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as,

*Crimīnor*, I accuse, or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have laid aside the passive sense.

### RULE for the formation of the Participle Perfect.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus,

\* *Cēcūtīt, gestīt, glōcīt, & dementīt, ineptīt,*  
*Nulla supina dabunt, cum prosilit atque ferocīt.*



*Lætor, lætatus, lætāri*, to rejoice ; *vĕreor, veritus, vĕrē-ri*, to fear ; *fungor, functus, fungi*, to discharge an office ; *pōtior, pōlitus, pōtīri*, to enjoy.

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations ; thus, *lætor* of the first conjugation, like *amor* :

### *Indicative Mode.*

Pref. *Lætor*, I rejoice ; *lætāris*, vel *-āre*, thou rejoicest, &c.

Imp. *Lætabar*, I rejoiced, or did rejoice ; *lætabaris*, &c.

Perf. *Lætatus sum* vel *fui*, I have rejoiced, &c.

Plu-perf. *Lætatus eram* vel *fueram*, I had rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Lætabor*, I shall or will rejoice ; *lætabĕris* or *-abĕre*, &c.

*Lætaturus sum*, I am to rejoice, or about to rejoice, &c.

### *Subjunctive.*

Pref. *Læter*, I may rejoice ; *lætĕris* or *-ĕre*, &c.

Imp. *Lætarer*, I might rejoice ; *lætārĕris* or *-rĕre*, &c.

Perf. *Lætatus sim* vel *fuerim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.

Plu-perf. *Lætatus essem* vel *fuissem*, I might have rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Lætatus fuero*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

### *Imperative.*

Pref. *Lætare* vel *-ātor*, rejoice thou ; *lætator*, let him rejoice, &c.

### *Infinitive.*

Pref. *Lætari*, to rejoice.

Perf. *Lætatus esse* vel *fuisse*, to have rejoiced.

Fut. *Lætaturus esse*, to be about to rejoice.

*Lætaturus fuisse*, to have been about to rejoice.

### *Participles.*

Pref. *Lætans*, rejoicing.

Perf. *Lætatus*, having rejoiced.

Fut. *Lætaturus*, about to rejoice.

*Lætandus*, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate in the First Conjugation,

*Adūlor*, to flatter.

*Arbitror*, to think.

*Auxilior*, to help.

*Comissor*,



Comeſſor, <i>to revel.</i>	Hortor, <i>to encourage.</i>	Palor, <i>to wander.</i>
Conor, <i>to endeavour.</i>	Hallucīnor, <i>to err.</i>	Precor, <i>to pray.</i>
Cunctor, <i>to delay.</i>	Imītor, <i>to imitate.</i>	Recordor, <i>to remem-</i> <i>ber.</i>
Domīnor, <i>to rule.</i>	Jocor, <i>to jest.</i>	Rixor, <i>to brawl.</i>
Epūlor, <i>to feaſt.</i>	Medītor, <i>to muſe.</i>	Sōlor, <i>to comfort.</i>
Ferior, <i>to keep holy-</i> <i>day.</i>	Mīnor, <i>to threaten.</i>	Scrutor, <i>to ſearch.</i>
Furor, <i>to ſteal.</i>	Mīror, <i>to wonder.</i>	Teſtor, <i>to witneſs.</i>
Glorior, <i>to boaſt.</i>	Nugor, <i>to trifle.</i>	Venēror, <i>to worſhip.</i>
Gratūlor, <i>to congratu-</i> <i>late.</i>	Opēror, <i>to work.</i>	Venor, <i>to hunt.</i>
	Opīnor, <i>to think.</i>	Vāgor, <i>to wander.</i>
	Popūlor, <i>to lay waſte.</i>	

In the Second Conjugation,

Mereor, <i>to deſerve.</i>	Polliceor, <i>to promiſe.</i>
Tueor, <i>to defend.</i>	Liceor, <i>to bid at an auſtion.</i>

In the Third Conjugation,

Amplector, complector, <i>to embrace.</i>	Revertor, <i>to return.</i>
---	-----------------------------

In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, <i>to ſooth.</i>	Partior, <i>to divide.</i>
Mentior, <i>to lie.</i>	Sortior, <i>to draw lots.</i>
Molior, <i>to attempt ſomething difficult.</i>	Largior, <i>to give liberally.</i>

There are no exceptions in the *First Conjugation*.

EXCEPTIONS in the *Second Conjugation*.

*Reor, rātus*, to think.  
*Misēreor, miſertus*, or not contracted *miseritus*, to pity.  
*Fāteor, faſſus*, to confeſs. The compounds of *fāteor* have *feſſus*; as, *proſīteor, profeſſus*, to profeſs. So *con-*  
*fīteor*.

EXCEPTIONS in the *Third Conjugation*.

*Lābor, lapſus*, to ſlide. So *al-*, *col-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *il-*,  
*inter-*, *per-*, *præter-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *subter-*, *super-*,  
*trans-lābor*.

*Ulcīſcor, ultus*, to revenge.

*Utor, ūſus*, to uſe. So *ab-*, *de-ūtor*.

*Lōquor, lōquūtus*, or *locūtus*, to ſpeak. So *al-*, *col-*,  
*circum-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *pro-lōquor*.

*Sequor, ſēquutus*, or *ſēcutus*, to follow. So *aſ-*, *con-*,  
*ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-ſēquor*.

*Quēror, queſtus*, to complain. So *con-*, *inter-*, *præ-*  
*quēror*.

*Nītor*,



*Nitor, nīsus* or *nixus*, to endeavour, to lean upon. So *an-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *re-*, *sub-nitor* : but the compounds have oftener *nixus*.

*Paciscor, pactus*, to bargain. So *de-peciscor*.

*Gradior, gressus*, to go. So *ag-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *in-*, *intro-*, *præ-*, *præter-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *sug-*, *super-*, *trans-grēdior*.

*Proficiscor, profectus*, to go a journey.

*Nanciscor, nactus*, to get.

*Pätior, passus*, to suffer. So *per-pëtior*.

*Apiscor, aptus*, to get. So *adipiscor, adeptus*, and *indipiscor, indeptus*.

*Commīniscor, commentus*, to devise or invent.

*Fruor, frūitus* or *fructus*, to enjoy. So *per-fruor*.

*Obliviscor, oblītus*, to forget.

*Expergiscor, experrectus*, to awake.

*Mōrior, mortuus*, to die. So *com-*, *de-*, *e-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *præ-mōrior*.

*Nascor, nātus*, to be born. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *re-*, *sub-nascor*.

*Orior, ortus, ōrīri*, to rise. \* So *ab-*, *ad-*, *co-*, *ex-*, *ob-*, *sub-ōrior*.

The three last form the future participle in *itūrus* ; thus, *mōritūrus, nascitūrus, ōritūrus*.

#### EXCEPTIONS in the Fourth Conjugation.

*Mētior, mensus*, to measure. So *ad-*, *com-*, *di-*, *e-*, *præ-*, *re-mētior*.

*Ordior, orsus*, to begin. So *ex-*, *red-ordior*.

*Expërior, expertus*, to try or attempt.

*Oppërior, oppertus*, to wait or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect\* :

*Vescor, vesci*, to feed.

*Liquor, liqui*, to melt or be dissolved.

*Mēdeor, mederi*, to heal.

*Remīniscor, reminisci*, to remember.

*Iraſcor, irasci*, to be angry.

*Ringor, ringi*, to grin like a dog.

*Prævertor, præverti*, to get before, to out-run.

*Diffīteor, diffīteri*, to deny.

*Divertor, diverti*, to turn aside, to take lodging.

*Defētiscor, defētisci*, to be weary, or faint.

\* Nil formant *vescor, liquor, medeor, reminiscor, Iraſcor, ringor, prævertor, diffiteorque* :  
Queis demum adjungas *divertor, dequefetiscor*.



The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight; *sum*, *eo*, *queo*, *vōlo*, *nōlo*, *mālo*, *fēro*, and *fīo*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six; *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *volo*.

*Sum* has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-*, *ab-*, *de-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *ob-*, *sub-*, *super-sum*; and *insum*, which last wants the preterite.

*Prosum*, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*; as,

Ind. *Pr.* Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est; pro-sūmus, &c.

*Im.* Prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat; prod-eramus, &c.

Sub. *Im.* Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset; prod-essemus, &c.

Imperat. Prod-esto, prod-este. Infinit. *Pres.* Prod-esse.

*Possun* is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*; and is thus conjugated:

Possun, potui, posse, *To be able*.

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Possun, potes, potest; posūmus, potestis, possunt.

*Im.* Pot-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

*Per.* Pot-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.

*Plu.* Pot-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

*Fut.* Pot-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Pos-sim, -sis, sit; -sīmus, -sitis, sint.

*Im.* Pos-sem, -ses, -set; -sēmus, -setis, -sent.

*Per.* Pot-uērim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Pla.* Pot-uissēm, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.

*Fut.* Pot-uēro, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Infinitive.*

*Pr.* Posse.

*Per.* Potuisse.

*The rest wanting.*



Eo, īvi, ĭtum, ĭre, *To go.*

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Eo, is, it; ĭnus, ĭtis, eunt.  
*Imp.* Ibam, ibas, ibat; ibamus, ibatis, ibant.  
*Per.* Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, iverunt, ivere.  
*Plu.* Iveram, iveras, iverat; iveramus, iveratis, iverant,  
*Fut.* Ibo, ibis, ibit; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Eam, eas, eat; eamus, eatis, eant.  
*Im.* Irem, ires, iret; iremus, iretis, irent.  
*Per.* Iverim, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.  
*Plu.* Ivissē, ivissēs, ivisset; ivissēmus, ivissetis, ivissent.  
*Fut.* Ivero, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

*Imperative.*

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* { I, ito; { ite, eunto.  
 { Ito, ito; { itote,  
*Pres.* Ire.  
*Perf.* Ivisse.  
*Fut.* Iturum esse.  
 Iturum fuisse.

*Participles.*

*Gerunds.*

*Supines.*

*Pr.* Iens, *Gen.* euntis.  
*Fut.* Iturus, -a, -um.  
 Eundum.  
 Eundi.  
 Eundo, &c.  
 1. Itum.  
 2. Itu.

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-*, *ab-*, *ex-*, *ob-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *per-*, *co-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *ante-*, *prod-eo*: So likewise *veneo*, -ii, (of *venum*, a sale, and *eo*) to be sold. But *ambio*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

In the tenses formed from the perfect, the compounds are usually contracted; as, *adii*, *adiisti* or *adisti*, *adiēram*, *adiērim*, &c.

*Eo*, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it*, he is going; *īvit*, he is gone; *īvērat*, he was gone; *iverit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So *vēnit*, he is coming; *vēnit*, he is come; *vēnērat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find



find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally ; as, *pericula adeuntur. Cic. Tusc. ii. 24.*

*Queo*, I can, and *nequeo*, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds ; and the participles are seldom used.

*Volo, volui, velle, To will, or to be willing.*

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Volo, vis, vult ; volumus, vultis, volunt.  
*Im.* Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat ; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
*Pe.* Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uerunt.  
*Pl.* Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat ; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
*Fut.* Vol-am, -es, -et ; -emus, -etis, -ent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Velim, velis, velit ; velimus, velitis, velint.  
*Im.* Vellem, velles, vellet ; vellēmus, velletis, vellent.  
*Per.* Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
*Plu.* Vol-uissēmus, -uissēs, -uisset ; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.  
*Fut.* Vol-uero, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Infinitive.*

*Participle.*

*Pres.* Velle.

*Perf.* Voluisse.

*Pres.* Volens.

*The rest are wanting.*

*Nolo, nolui, nolle, To be unwilling.*

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Nolo, non-vis, non-vult ; nolumus, non-vultis, nolunt.  
*Im.* Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat ; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
*Per.* Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.  
*Plu.* Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat ; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
*Fut.* Nolum, -noles, nolet ; nolemus, noletis, nolent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Nolim, nolis, nolit ; nolimus, nolitis, nolint.  
*Im.* Nollem, nolles, nollet ; nollemus, nolletis, nollent.  
*Per.* Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
*Plu.* Nol-uissēmus, -uissēs, -uisset ; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.  
*Fut.* Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.



	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
<i>Pr.</i>	{ Noli, Nolito ;	{ nolite, nolitote.	<i>Pr.</i> Nolle. <i>Pr.</i> Nolens, <i>Per.</i> Noluiffe. <i>The rest wanting.</i>

Mālo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Malo,	mavis, mavult ;	malūmus, mavultis, malunt.
<i>Im</i>	Mal-ebam,	-ebas, -ebat ;	-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Mal-ui,	-uisti, -uit ;	-uimus, -uistis, -uerunt. -uere.
<i>Plu.</i>	Mal-ueram,	-ueras, -uerat ;	-ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Mal-am,	-es, -et : &c.	<i>This is scarcely in use.</i>

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Malim,	malis, malit ;	malīmus, malitis, malint.
<i>Im</i>	Mallem,	malles, mallet ;	malleumus, malletis, malient.
<i>Per.</i>	Mal-uerim,	-ueris, -uerit ;	-uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Mal-uissēm,	-uisses, -uisset ;	-uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Mal-uero,	-ueris, -uerit ;	-uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Infinitive Mode.*

*Pres.* Malle. *Perf.* Maluiffe. *The rest are wanting.*

Fěro, tūli, lātum, ferre, *To bring or suffer.*

A C T I V E V O I C E.

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Fěro,	fers, fert ;	ferīmus, fertis, ferunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Fer-ebam,	-ebas, -ebat ;	-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Tuli,	tulisti, tulit ;	tulimus, tulistis, tulerunt, -ere.
<i>Plu.</i>	Tul-eram,	-eras, -erat ;	-eramus, -eratis, -erant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Feram,	feres, feret ;	feremus, feretis, ferent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Feram,	feras, ferat ;	feramus, feratis, ferant.
<i>Im.</i>	Ferrem,	ferres, ferret ;	ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.
<i>Per.</i>	Tul-erim,	-eris, -erit ;	-erimus, -eritis, -erint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Tul-issēm,	-isses, -isset ;	-issēmus, -issetis, -issent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Tul-ero,	-eris, -erit ;	-erimus, -eritis, -erint.

*Imperative.*



<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> { Fer, fertor : { ferte, ferunto. Ferto, fertote,	<i>Pr.</i> Ferre. <i>Per.</i> Tulisse. <i>Fut.</i> Laturum esse vel fuisse.

<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Ferens. <i>Fut.</i> Laturus, -a, -um.	Ferendum. Ferendi. Ferendo, &c.	1. Latum. 2. Latu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Feror, latus, ferri, *To be brought.*

*Indicative Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i> Feror, ferris, fertur ; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur. vel ferre,	
<i>Im.</i> Fer-ebar, -ebaris, -ebatur ; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur. vel -ebare,	
<i>Per.</i> Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i> Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i> Ferar, ferēris, feretur ; feremur, feremini, ferentur. vel ferere,	

*Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i> Ferar, feraris, feratur ; feramur, feramini, ferantur. vel ferare,	
<i>Im.</i> Ferrer, ferreris, ferretur ; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur. vel ferrere,	
<i>Per.</i> Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i> Latus essem, &c. latus fuisssem, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i> Latus fuero, &c.	

*Imperative Mode.*

*Pres.* Ferre vel fertor, fertor ; ferimini, feruntor.

*Infinitive.*

*Participles.*

<i>Pres.</i> Ferri.	<i>Perf.</i> Latus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Latum esse vel fuisse.	<i>Fut.</i> Ferendus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Latum iri.	

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fĕro* ;  
*as, affĕro, attŭli, allatum ; aufĕro, abſtuli, ablatum ; dif-*  
*fĕro, diſtuli, dilatatum ; confĕro, contuli, collatum ; infĕro,*  
*intuli, illatum ; offĕro, obtuli, oblatum ; effĕro, extuli,*  
*elatum.*



*elatum.* So *circum-*, *per-*, *trans-*, *de-*, *pro-*, *ante-*, *præ-*  
*fĕro*.

Obf. 1. Moft part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo*, for *magis volo*; *fero*, *fers*, *fert*, &c. for *feris*, *ferit*, &c.

Obf. 2. The imperatives of *dīco*, *dūco*, and *fācio* are contracted in the ſame manner with *fer*: thus we ſay, *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, inſtead of *dīce*, *dūce*, *fāce*. But theſe often occur likewiſe in the regular form.

Fīo, factus, fīeri, *To be made or done, to become.*

### *Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Fio,        fis,        fit;        fimus,        fitis,        fiunt.  
*Im.* Fiebam,    fiebas, fiebat;    fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.  
*Per.* Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.  
*Plu.* Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.  
*Fut.* Fiam,        fies,        fiet;        fiemus,        fietis,        fient.

### *Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Fiam, fias, fiat ; fiamus, fiatis, fiant.  
*Im.* Fiërem, fieres, fieret ; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.  
*Per.* Factus sim, &c. factus fuerim, &c.  
*Plu.* Factus essem, &c. factus fuifsem, &c.  
*Fut.* Factus fuero, &c.

*Imperative.*

*Infinitive.*

*Pr.* { Fi, fito : { fité, fiunto.     *Pr.* Fieri.  
          Fito, fito : { fitote, fiunto.     *Per.* Factum esse *vel* fuisse.  
                             *Fut.* Factum iri.

*Participles.*

*Supine.*

<i>Per.</i>	Factus,	-a,	-um.	Factu.
<i>Fut.</i>	Faciendus,	-a,	-um.	

The compounds of *făcio* which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *cale-facio*, *calefio*, *calefac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confice*; *conficior*, *confectus*, *confici*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confieri*; *desit*, it is wanting; *infit*, he begins.

To



To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called *Neuter-passive Verbs*, which, like *ſio*, form the preterite tenſes according to the paſſive voice, and the reſt in the active. Theſe are *ſoleo, ſolitus, ſolēre*, to uſe; *audeo, auſus, audēre*, to dare; *gaudeo, gavīſus, gaudēre*, to rejoice; *ſideo, fīſus, fidere*, to truſt.

To theſe may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and paſſive in their ſignification; as, *vapulō, -avi, -atum*, to be beaten; *veneo*, to be ſold, &c.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not uſed in certain tenſes, numbers, and perſons.

Theſe three, *odi, cæpi*, and *memini*, are only uſed in the preterite tenſes; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have ſometimes likewise a preſent ſignification: thus,

*Odi*, I hate, or have hated, *oderam, oderim, odiſſem, odero, odiſſe*. Participles *oſus, oſurus: exoſus, peroſus*.

*Cæpi*, I have begun, rarely I begin, *cæperam, -erim, -iſſem, -ero, -iſſe*. Supine *cæptu* Participles *cæptus, cæpturus*.

*Memini*, I remember, or have remembered, *memineram, -erim, -iſſem, -ero, -iſſe*: Imperative, *memento, mementote*.

To theſe ſome add *nōvi*, becauſe it frequently hath the ſignification of the preſent, *i know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *noſco*, which is complete.

*Furo*\*, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *ſor*, to ſpeak, as alſo *der* and *fer*, are not uſed in the firſt perſon ſingular: thus, we ſay, *daris, datur*; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following moſt frequently occur, *aio*. I ſay, *inquam*, I ſay, *forem*, I ſhould be; *auſim*, contracted for *auſus ſim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll ſee to it, or I will do it; *ave* and *ſalve*, ſave you, hail, good-morrow, *ceao*, tell thou or give me; *quæſo*, I pray.

<i>Ind. Pr.</i>	<i>Aio,</i>	<i>ais,</i>	<i>ait:</i>	—	—	<i>aiunt.</i>
<i>Im.</i>	<i>Aicbam,</i>	<i>-ebas,</i>	<i>-ebat:</i>	<i>-ebamus,</i>	<i>-ebatis,</i>	<i>-ebant.</i>
<i>Per.</i>	—	<i>aifti,</i>	—	—	—	—

\* *Dor, furo, for, der, fer*, vix unquam ſuſcipit uſus.



*Sub. Pr.* ——— aias, aiat: ——— aiatis, aiant.

*Imperat. Ai.*

*Particip. Pres. Aiens.*

*Ind. Pr.* Inquam, -quis, -quit: -quīmus, -quītis, -quiunt.

*Im.* ——— inquebat: ——— inquebant.

*Per.* ——— inquisti, ——— ——— ———

*Fut.* ——— inquires, inquiet: ——— ——— ———

*Imperat.* Inque, inquīto.

*Particip. Pr.* Inquiens.

*Sub. Im.* { Fōrem, fores, foret: forem, foretis, forent.  
*Plu.* {

*Inf.* Fore, *to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the same with futurum esse.*

*Sub. Pr.* Aufim, aufis, aufit: ——— ——— ———

*Per.* Faxim, faxis, faxit: ——— ——— faxint.

*Fut.* Faxy, faxis, faxit: ——— faxitis, faxint.

Note. *Faxim* and *faxy* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

*Imper.* Ave *vel* avēto; *plur.* avēte *v.* avetote. *Inf.* avere.

—— Salve *v.* falveto; —— falvete *v.* falvetote. —— falvere.

*Indic. Fut.* —— Salvebis.

*Imperat. Sing.* Cedo, *plur.* cedite.

*Indic. Præs.* Quæso, quæsūmus.

Most of the other defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets; as, *infir.* he begins; *desit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis*, for *si vis*; *jultis* for *si vultis*; *sodes*, for *si audes*; *capfis*, for *cape si vis*.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any *person* or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *delectat*, it delights; *dēcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evēnit*, it happens:



	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Ind. <i>Pr.</i>	Delectat,	Dēcet,	Contingit,	Evēnit,
<i>Im.</i>	Delectabat,	Decebat,	Contingebat,	Eveniebat,
<i>Per.</i>	Delectavit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Evēnit,
<i>Plu.</i>	Delectaverat,	Decuerat,	Contigerat,	Evenerat,
<i>Fut.</i>	Delectabit.	Decebit.	Continget.	Eveniet.
Sub. <i>Pr.</i>	Delectet,	Deceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat,
<i>Im.</i>	Delectaret,	Decēret,	Contingēret,	Eveniret,
<i>Per.</i>	Delectaverit,	Decuerit,	Contigerit,	Evenerit,
<i>Plu.</i>	Delectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset,
<i>Fut.</i>	Delectaverit.	Decuerit.	Contigerit.	Evenerit.
Inf. <i>Pr.</i>	Delectāre,	Decēre,	Contingēre,	Evenīre,
<i>Per.</i>	Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially neuter verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, *favētur*, *curritur*, *venitur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *saveo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

Ind. <i>Pr.</i>	Pugnātur,	Favētur,	Curritur,	Venitur,
<i>Im.</i>	Pugnabatur,	Favebatur,	Currebatur,	Veniebatur,
<i>Per.</i>	Pugnatum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
<i>Plu.</i>	Pugnatum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
<i>Fut.</i>	Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Curretur.	Venietur.
Sub. <i>Pr.</i>	Pugnetur,	Faveatur,	Curratur,	Veniatur,
<i>Im.</i>	Pugnaretur,	Faveretur,	Curreretur,	Veniretur,
<i>Per.</i>	Pugnatum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
<i>Plu.</i>	Pugnatum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
<i>Fut.</i>	Pugnatum fuerit.	Fautum fuerit.	Cursum fuerit.	Ventum fuerit.
Inf. <i>Pr.</i>	Pugnari,	Faveri,	Curri,	Veniri,
	Pugnatum esse,	Fautum esse,	Cursum esse,	Ventum esse,
	Pugnatum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive; as, *delectet*, let it delight, &c.; nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dēcet*, it becomes; *pœnitet*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *misēret*, it pities; *pūget*, it irketh; *pūdet*, it shameth; *licet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *lūbet*, it pleaseth; *tædet*, it wearieeth; *liquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite;



preterite ; *miseret, miseruit, or misertum est; piget, piguit, or pigitum est; pudet, pudit, or puditum est; licet, licuit, or licitum est; libet, libuit, or libitum est; tædet, tæduit, tæsum est, but oftener pertæsum est.* But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations :

In the first, *Jūvat, spectat, vācat, stat, constat, præstat, &c.*

In the second, *Appāret, attinet, pertinet, dēbet, dōlet, nōcet, lātet, pātet, plācet, displicet, sēdet, sōlet, &c.*

In the third, *Accidit, incipit, desinit, sufficit, &c.*

In the fourth, *Convēnit, expēdit, &c.*

Also irregular verbs, *Est, cbest, proudest, potest, interest, superest; fit, prætērit, nequit, subit, confert, refert, &c.*

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgūrat, fulminat, tōnat, grandīnat, gēlat, pluit, ningit, luceſcit, advesperascit, &c.*

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mihi, tibi, illi, it pleases me, thee, him; or I please, thou pleasest, &c. pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c.*

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus we can say, *ego placeo tibi, I please you;* but we cannot say, *ſi places audire, if you please to hear,* but *ſi placet tibi audire.* So, we can say, *multa homini contingunt* many things happen to a man: but instead of *ego contigi eſſe domi,* we must either say, *me contigit eſſe domi,* or *mihi contigit eſſe domi,* I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of impersonal verbs is best taught by practice.

#### REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree; *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several



Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo, lavas, lavāre*: and *lavo, lavis, lavēre*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as,

*Ferveo, ferves, and fervo, fervis, to boil.*

*Fulgeo, fulges, and fulgo, fulgis, to shine.*

*Strīdeo, strides, and strīdo, stridis, to make a noise.*

*Tueor, tuēris, and tuor, tuēris, to defend.*

To these add *tergeo, terges*; and *tergo, tergis*, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,

*Fodio, fodis, fodēre, and fodio, fodis, fodīre, to dig.*

*Sallo, fallis, fallēre, and fallio, fallis, fallīre, to salt.*

*Arcesso, -is, arcessere, and arcessio, arcessīre, to send for.*

*Morior, morēris, mori, and morior, morīris, morīri, to die.*

*So Orīor, orēris, and orior, orīris, orīri, to rise.*

*Potior, potēris, and potior, potīris, potīri, to enjoy.*

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cieo, cies, ciēre*; and *cio, cis, cīre*, to rouse; whence *accīre* and *accītus*.

To these we may add the verb *edo*, to eat, which, tho' regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum*: thus,

Ind. Pres. *Edo, edis* or *es, edit* or *est*; — *editis* or *estis*. —

Imp. *Ede* or *es, edito* or *esto*; *edite* or *este, editote* or *estote*.

Sub. Imperf. *Ederem* or *essem, ederes* or *esses, &c.*

Inf. Pres. *Edere* or *esse*.

Passive Ind. Pres. *Editur* or *estur*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and others in the supine.



1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated :

Aggĕro, -as, *to heap up.*  
 Appello, -as, *to call.*  
 Compello, -as, *to address.*  
 Collĭgo, -as, *to bind.*  
 Conſterno, -as, *to astoniſh.*  
 Effĕro, -as, *to enrage.*  
 Fundo, -as, *to found.*  
 Mando, -as, *to command.*  
 Obsĕro, -as, *to lock.*  
 Vŏlo, -as, *to fly.*

Aggĕro, -is, *to bring together.*  
 Appello, -is, *to arrive.*  
 Compello, -is, *to drive together.*  
 Collĭgo, -is, *to gather together.*  
 Conſterno, -is, *to ſtrew.*  
 Effĕro, -fers, *to bring out.*  
 Fundo, -is, *to pour out.*  
 Mando, -is, *to cheiv.*  
 Obsĕro, -is, *to beſet.*  
 Vŏlo, vis, *to will.*

1. Of this claſs ſome have a different quantity ; as,

Cŏlo, -as, *to ſtrain.*  
 Dĭco, -as, *to dedicate.*  
 Edŭco, -as, *to train up.*  
 Lĕgo, -as, *to ſend.*  
 Vādo, -as, *to wade.*

Cŏlo, -is, *to till.*  
 Dĭco, -is, *to ſay.*  
 Edŭco, -is, *to lead forth.*  
 Lĕgo, -is, *to read.*  
 Vādo, -is, *to go.*

2. The following verbs agree in the preterite :

Acce, acui, *to be ſour.*  
 Creſco, crēvi, *to grow.*  
 Frĭgeo, frixi, *to be cold.*  
 Fulgeo, fulſi, *to ſbine.*  
 Lŭceo, luxi, *to ſbine.*  
 Pāveo, pāvi, *to be afraid.*  
 Pendeo, pĕpendi, *to hang.*

Acuo, acui, *to ſharpen.*  
 Cerno, crēvi, *to ſee.*  
 Frĭgo, frixi, *to fry.*  
 Fulcio, fulſi, *to prop.*  
 Lŭgeo, luxi, *to mourn.*  
 Paſco, pāvi, *to feed.*  
 Pendo, pĕpendi, *to weigh.*

3. The following agree in the ſupine :

Creſco, crētum, *to grow.*  
 Māneo, manſum, *to ſtay.*  
 Sto, ſtatum, *to ſtand.*  
 Succenſeo, -cenſum, *to be angry.*  
 Tĕneo, tentum, *to hold.*  
 Verro, verſum, *to ſweep.*  
 Vinco, victum, *to overcome.*

Cerno, cretum, *to behold.*  
 Mando, manſum, *to cheiv.*  
 Siſto, ſtatum, *to ſtop.*  
 Succendo, -cenſum, *to kindle.*  
 Tendo, tentum, *to ſtretch out.*  
 Verto, verſum, *to turn.*  
 Vivo, victum, *to live.*

## The OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenſes.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *ībam*, without the *e* ; as, *audībam*, *ſcībam* ; for *audiēbam*, *ſciēbam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation,



tion, they used *ībo* in the active, and *ībor* in the passive voice; as, *dormībo*, *dormībor*, for *dormiam*, *dormiar*.

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *im*; as, *edim*, for *edam*; *duim* for *dem*.

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *ssim*, and the future in *ssō*; as, *levassim*, *levassō*, for *levaverim*, *levavero*; *capssim*, *capssō*, for *ceperim*, *cepero*: Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *assere*; as, *levassere*, for *levaturus esse*.

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *mīno* in the singular, and *mīnor* in the plural; as, *famīno*, for *fare*; and *progrēdimīnor*, for *progrēdimīni*.

6. The syllable *er* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *farier*, for *fari*; *dicier*, for *dici*.

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable: thus, *credo inimicos dicturum esse*, for *dicturos*, Cic. *Cohortes ad me missum facias*, for *missas*, Cic. ad Attic. viii. 12.

## DERIVATIVE VERBS.

Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as, *cæno*, to sup, from *cæna*, -æ, a supper; *opëror*, to work, from *opus*, -ëris, a work, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *patrissō*, -are, I imitate my father; *græcor*, -ari, I resemble a Grecian; from *pater*, *Græcus*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *Frequentatives* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the first supine, by changing *ātu* into *ītē*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *ū* into *ō*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamīto*, to cry frequently: So *terreo*, *terrīto*; *verto*, *versō*; *dormio*, *dormīto*.

In like manner, deponent verbs form frequentatives in  
M or;



or; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minitor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato*, from *no*; *scitor*, or rather *sciscitor*, from *scio*; *pavito*, from *paveo*; *señtor*, from *sequor*; *loquitor*, from *loquor*. So *querito*, *fundito*, *agito*, *fluïto*, &c.

From frequentative verbs are also formed other frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curso*, *kursito*; *pello*, *pulso*, *pulsito*, or by contraction *pulto*.

2. *Inceptive Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person sing. of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*: as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labasco*, from *labo*; *tremisco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco*, from *hio*, is contracted for *hiasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*.

All inceptives are neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *Desiderative Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *esurio*, I desire to eat, from *esu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation, and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *esurio*, *parturio*, *nupturio*.

## PARTICIPLE.

A participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having in *Latin* gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both. Participles in English, like adjectives, admit of no variation.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs



verbs from which they come : only participles in *dus* are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four participles, the present and future active ; as, *amans*, loving ; *amatūrus*, about to love : and the perfect and future passive ; as, *amatus*, loved ; *amandus*, to be loved.

They have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice ; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connection with the other words of a sentence ; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*.

Deponent and common verbs have commonly four participles ; as, *loquens*, speaking ; *locutūrus*, about to speak ; *locutus*, having spoken ; *loquendus*, to be spoken : *dignans*, vouchsafing ; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe ; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed ; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed.

If from the signification of a participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison ; as, *amans*, loving, *amantior*, *amantissimus* ; *doctus*, learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus*.

There are a kind of verbal adjectives in *bundus*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action ; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much ; *Sall. Jug.* 60. and 101. ; *Liv* xxv. 13.

## GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

Gerunds are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed ; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the gerund, and in Eng-



lish have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

Supines have much the same signification with gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former supine is used when motion is expressed; and rarely occurs in a passive sense.

The latter supine has sometimes an active, but much more frequently a passive signification.

## A D V E R B.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, added to a verb, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality, Manner, &c.*

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place, Time, and Order.*

1. Adverbs of *Place* are fivefold, namely, such as signify,

1. <i>Motion or rest in a place.</i>		Huc,	<i>Hitber.</i>
Ubi?	<i>Where?</i>	Illuc,	} <i>Thither.</i>
Hic,	<i>Here.</i>	Isthuc,	
Illic,	} <i>There.</i>	Intro,	<i>In.</i>
Isthic,		Foras,	<i>Out.</i>
Ibi,		Eò,	<i>To that place.</i>
Intus,	<i>Within.</i>	Aliò,	<i>To another place.</i>
Foris,	<i>Without.</i>	Aliquò,	<i>To some place.</i>
Ubique,	<i>Every where.</i>	Eòdem,	<i>To the same place.</i>
Nusquam,	<i>No where.</i>	3. <i>Motion towards a place.</i>	
Alicubi,	<i>Some where.</i>	Quorsum?	<i>Whitherward?</i>
Alibi,	<i>Else where.</i>	Versus,	<i>Towards.</i>
Ubivis,	<i>Any where.</i>	Horsum,	<i>Hitherward.</i>
Ibidem,	<i>In the same place.</i>	Illorsum,	<i>Thitherward.</i>
2. <i>Motion to a place.</i>		Sursum,	<i>Upward.</i>
Quo?	<i>Whither?</i>	Deorsum,	<i>Downward.</i>
			<i>Antrorsum,</i>



Antrorsum, *Forward.*  
 Retrorsum, *Backward.*  
 Dextrorsum, *Towards the right.*  
 Sinistrorsum, *Towards the left.*

4. *Motion from a place.*

Unde? *Whence?*  
 Hinc, *Hence.*  
 Illinc, } *Thence.*  
 Isthinc, }  
 Inde, }  
 Aliunde, *From else where.*  
 Alicunde, *From some place.*

Sicunde, *If from any place.*  
 Utrunque, *On both sides.*  
 Superne, *From above.*  
 Inferne, *From below.*  
 Cœlitus, *From heaven.*  
 Funditus, *From the ground.*

5. *Motion through or by a place.*

Quà? *Which way?*  
 Hâc, *This way.*  
 Illac, } *That way.*  
 Isthac, }  
 Aliâ, *Another way.*

2. *Adverbs of Time are threefold, namely, such as signify,*

1. *Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.*

Nunc, *Now.*  
 Hodie, *To day.*  
 Tunc, } *Then.*  
 Tum, }  
 Heri, *Yesterday.*  
 Dudum, } *Heretofore.*  
 Pridem, }  
 Pridie, *The day before.*  
 Nudiustertius, *Three days ago.*  
 Nuper, *Lately.*  
 Jamjam, } *Presently.*  
 Mox, } *Immediately.*  
 Statim, } *By and by.*  
 Protinus, *Instantly.*  
 Illico, *Straightway.*  
 Cras, *To-morrow.*  
 Postridie, *The day after.*  
 Perendie, *Two days hence.*  
 Nondum, *Not yet.*  
 Quando? *When?*  
 Aliquando, } *Sometimes.*  
 Nonnunquam, }  
 Interdum, }  
 Semper, *Ever.*  
 Nunquam, *Never.*

Intërim, *In the mean time.*  
 Quotidie, *Daily.*

2. *Continuance of time.*

Diu, *Long.*  
 Quamdïa? *How long.*  
 Tamdiu, *So long.*  
 Jamdiu, } *Long ago.*  
 Jamdūdum, }  
 Jampridem, }

3. *Vicissitude or repetition of time.*

Quoties? *How often?*  
 Sæpe, *Often.*  
 Rarò, *Seldom.*  
 Toties, *So often.*  
 Aliquoties, *For several times.*  
 Vicissim, } *By turns.*  
 Alternatim, }  
 Rursus, } *Again.*  
 Iterum, }  
 Subinde, } *Ever and anon.*  
 Identidem, }  
 Semel, *Once.*  
 Bis, *Twice.*  
 Ter, *Trice.*  
 Quater, *Four times, &c.*

3. *Adverbs of Order.*

Inde, *Then.*  
 Deinde, *After that.*  
 Dehinc, *Henceforth.*  
 Porro, *Moreover.*  
 Deinceps, *So forth.*  
 Denovo, *Of new.*

Denique, *Finally.*  
 Postremò, *Lastly.*  
 Primò, -ùm, *First.*  
 Secundò, -ùm, *Secondly.*  
 Tertiò, -ùm, *Thirdly.*  
 Quartò, -ùm, *Fourthly, &c.*



II. Adverbs denoting *QUALITY*, *MANNER*, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. *Quality* simply ; as, *bene*, well ; *malè*, ill ; *fortiter*, bravely : and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. *Certainty* ; as, *profectò*, *certè*, *sanè*, *planè*, *næ*, *utique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes ; *quidni*, why not ? *omnino*, certainly.

3. *Contingence* ; as, *fortè*, *forsan*, *fortassis*, *fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. *Negation* ; as, *non*, *haud*, not ; *nequāquam*, not at all ; *neutiquam*, by no means ; *minime*, nothing less.

5. *Prohibition* ; as, *ne*, not.

6. *Swearing* ; as, *hercle*, *pol*, *edēpol*, *mecastor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. *Explaining* ; as, *utpōte*, *videlicet*, *scilicet*, *nimirum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. *Separation* ; as, *seorsum*, apart ; *separatim*, separately ; *sigillatim*, one by one ; *virītim*, man by man ; *oppidatim*, town by town, &c.

9. *Joining together* ; as, *simul*, *urā*, *pariter*, together ; *generaliter*, generally ; *universaliter*, universally ; *plurimūque*, for the most part.

10. *Indication* or *pointing out* ; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.

11. *Interrogation* ; as, *cur*, *quare*, *quamobrem*, why, wherefore ? *nam*, *an*, whether ? *quomodo*, *quī*, how ? To which add, *Ubi*, *quo*, *quorsum*, *unde*, *quā*, *quando*, *quandiu*, *quoties*.

Those which are called *Comparative* denote,

1. *Excess* ; as, *Valde*, *maximè*, *magnopere*, *summopere*, *admodum*, *oppidò*, *perquam*, *longè*, very much, exceedingly ; *nimis*, *nimum*, too much ; *prorsus*, *penitus*, *omnino*, altogether, wholly ; *magis*, more ; *melius*, better ; *pejùs*, worse ; *fortius*, more bravely : And *optimè*, best ; *pestimè*, worst ; *fortissimè*, most bravely ; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2. *Defect* ; as, *Ferme*, *ferè*, *prope*, *propemodum*, *penè*, almost ; *parum*, little ; *paulo*, *paululum*, very little.

3. *Preference* ; as, *potius*, *satiùs*, rather ; *potissimum*, *præcipuè*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially ; *imo*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. *Likeness*



4. *Likeness or Equality* ; as, *ita, sic, adeò* ; so, *ut, uti, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quasi*, as, as if ; *quemadmodum*, even as ; *satis*, enough ; *itidem*, in like manner.

5. *Unlikeness or inequality* ; as, *aliter, secus*, otherwise ; *aliòqui* or *alioquin*, else ; *nedum*, much more or much less.

6. *Abatement* ; as, *sensim, paulatim, pedetentim*, by degrees, piecemeal ; *vix*, scarcely ; *ægre*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. *Exclusion* ; as, *tantùm, solùm, modò, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum*, only.

Obs. 1. The adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more ; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia* ; *hic*, for *in hoc loco* ; *semper*, for *in omni tempore* ; *semel*, for *unâ vice* ; *bis*, for *duabus vicibus* ; *Mehercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c.

Obs. 2. Adjectives are often taken adverbially both in English and Latin ; as, *perfidum ridens*, the same with *perfidè*, Horat. Od. b. 3. ver. 67. So in English, we say, to speak *loud, high*, &c. for *loudly, highly*, &c. In many cases the substantive is understood ; as, *primo*, scil. *loco* ; *optato advēnis*, scil. *tempore* ; *hac* scil. *via*, &c.

Obs. 3. A great many adverbs are compounded of different words ; as, *quomodo*, of *quo modo* ; *quare*, of *quare* ; *scilicet*, of *scire licet* ; *videlicet*, of *videre licet* ; *illicet*, of *ire licet* ; *illico*, of *in loco* ; *magnopere*, of *magno opere*, &c.

Obs. 4. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other : as, *ubi*, where or when ; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next ; *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 5. Some adverbs of time are either *past, present*, or *future* ; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by ; *olim*, long ago, sometime hereafter.

Obs. 6. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjection *so ever* ; as, *ubiubi*, or *ubicunque*, wheresoever ; *quoquo, quòcunque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in other interrogative words ; as, *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever ; *quantusquantus*, or *quantuscunque*,



*que*, how great soever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however or howsoever, &c. In English, the adverbs *here*, *there*, and *where*, when joined to certain participles or prepositions, as, *to*, *of*, *by*, *with*, *in*, &c. have the signification of pronouns; as, *hereof*, the same with *of this*; *thereof*, the same with *of that*; *whereof*, *of which*, &c.

Obs. 7. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as from *Ille*, *illic*, *illuc*, *illorsum*, *illinc*, and *illac*. So from *Quis*, *ubi*, *quo*, *quorsum*, *unde*, and *quà*. Also of time; thus, *quando*, *quandiu*, and *quoties*.

Obs. 8. Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e* or *ter*; as, *durè*, *facilè*, *acriter*: The *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *durius*, *facilius*, *acrius*: The *superlative*, in *ime*; as, *durissimè*, *facillimè*, *acerrimè*.

Obs. 9. Adverbs in English are not varied by comparison, except some few of them, particularly irregulars; as, *often*, *oftener*, *oftenest*; *well*, *better*, *best*; *much*, *more*, *most*, &c.

## P R E P O S I T I O N.

A preposition is an indeclinable word which shews the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight prepositions in Latin which govern the accusative:

Ad,	To.	Infra,	Beneath.
Apud,	At.	Juxta,	Nigh to.
Ante,	Before.	Ob,	For.
Adversus,	} Against.	Propter,	For, hard by.
Adversum,		Per,	By, through.
Contra,		Præter,	Besides, except.
Cis,	} On this side.	Penes,	In the power of.
Citra,		Post,	After.
Circa,	} About.	Pone,	Behind.
Circum,		Secus,	By, along.
Erga,	Towards.	Secundum,	According to.
Extra,	Without.	Supra,	Above.
Inter,	Between, among.	Trans,	On the farther side.
Intra,	Within.	Ultra,	Beyond.

The prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen; namely,



A,	}	<i>From.</i>	De,	}	<i>Of, concerning.</i>
Ab,			E,		<i>Of, out of.</i>
Abs,			Ex,		
Abſque,		<i>Without.</i>	Pro,		<i>For.</i>
Cum,		<i>With.</i>	Præ,		<i>Before.</i>
Clam,	{	<i>Without the know-</i>	Palam,		<i>With the knowledge of.</i>
		<i>ledge of.</i>	Sine,		<i>Without.</i>
Coram,	{	<i>Before, in the pre-</i>	Tenus,		<i>Up to, as far as.</i>
		<i>sence of.</i>			

These four govern ſometimes the accuſative, and ſometimes the ablative.

In,	<i>In, into.</i>	Super,	<i>Above.</i>
Sub,	<i>Under.</i>	Subter,	<i>Beneath.</i>

Obſ. 1. Prepoſitions are ſo called, becauſe they are generally *placed before* the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after; as, *cum*, when joined with *me, te, ſe*, and ſometimes with *quo, quî, and quibus*: thus, *mecum, tecum, &c.* *Tenus* is always placed after; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin. So likewiſe are *verſus* and *uſque*; and *ward*, in Engliſh; as, *toward, eaſtward, &c.*

Obſ. 2. Moſt prepoſitions originally denote the relation of place, and have been transferred by ſimilitude to expreſs other relations.

Obſ. 3. Prepoſitions in Engliſh have always after them the accuſative or objective caſe. And when prepoſitions either in Engliſh or Latin do not govern a caſe, they are reckoned adverbs. Hence, *prope*, nigh; *uſque*, unto; *circiter*, about; *verſus*, towards, are commonly not conſidered as prepoſitions, but adverbs, becauſe they are thought not to govern the accuſative of themſelves, but by the prepoſition *ad* underſtood. The ſame is the caſe with *procul*, far, which governs the ablative with *a* or *ab* underſtood. To theſe perhaps may be added *clam*, which is joined very frequently with the accuſative; as, *clam patre, or patrem*; *a* being underſtood to the one, and *quod ad, or quod attinet ad*, to the other.

Obſ. 4. Prepoſitions, both in Engliſh and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of ſpeech, particularly with verbs; as, *ſubire*, to undergo. In Engliſh they are frequently put after verbs; as, *to go in, to go out, to look to, &c.*

Obſ. 5. Prepoſitions in compoſition uſually retain their primitive ſignification: as, *adeo*, to go to; *præpono*, to place before. But from this there are ſeveral exceptions:



1. *In* joined with adjectives generally denotes privation; as, *infidus*, unfaithful: but when joined with verbs, increases their signification; as, *indūro*, to harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses; as, *invocatus*, called upon, or not called upon. So *infrēnatus*, *immutatus*, &c. But these words, when taken in a negative sense, seem to be adjectives. 2. *Per*, *præ*, and *ex*, commonly increase the signification; as, *percārus*, *prædives*, *præpolleo*, *exclāmo*, &c. *Ex* sometimes signifies privation; as, *exsanguis*, bloodless, pale, &c. In short, it is often extremely difficult to ascertain the precise meaning of prepositions when joined in composition with other words.

Obf. 6. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am*, *di*, or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words: however they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	<i>round about.</i>	} as,	Ambio,	<i>to surround.</i>
Di,	<i>asunder.</i>		Divello,	<i>to pull asunder.</i>
Dis,			Distrāho,	<i>to draw asunder.</i>
Re,	<i>again.</i>		Relĕgo,	<i>to read again.</i>
Se,	<i>aside or apart.</i>		Sepōno,	<i>to lay aside.</i>
Con,	<i>together.</i>		Concreſco,	<i>to grow together.</i>

## INTERJECTION.

An interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; as, *Oh!* *Ah!*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. Joy; as, *evax!* hey, brave, io!
2. Grief; as, *ah*, *hei*, *heu*, *eheu!* ah, alas, woe me!
3. Wonder; as, *papæ!* O strange? *vah!* hah!
4. Praise; as, *euge!* well done!
5. Aversion; as, *apäge!* away, begone, fy, tush!
6. Exclaiming; as, *Oh*, *proh!* O!
7. Surprise or fear; as, *atat!* ha, aha!
8. Imprecation;



8. *Imprecation*; as, *væ!* wo, pox on't!
9. *Laughter*; as, *ha, ha, he!*
10. *Silencing*; as, *au, 'st, pax!* silence, hush, 'st!
11. *Calling*; as, *cho, io, ho!* so, ho, ho, O!
12. *Derision*; as, *hui!* away with!
13. *Attention*; as, *hem!* ha!

Some interjections denote several different passions: thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Miserrum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villainy!

## CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus, *You and I, and the boy, read Virgil*, is one sentence, made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil*. In like manner, “*You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid,*” is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. *Copulative*; as, *et, ac, atque, que*, and; *etiam, quoque, item*, also; *cum, tum*, both, and. Also their contraries, *nec, neque, neu, neve*, neither, nor.
2. *Disjunctive*; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive*, either, or.
3. *Concessive*; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quamquam, quamvis*, though, although, albeit.
4. *Adversative*; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui*, but; *tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumenumvero*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.
5. *Causal*; as, *nam, namque, enim*, for; *quia, quippe, quoniam*, because; *quod*, that, because.
6. *Illative or Rational*; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque*, therefore; *quapropter, quocirca*, wherefore; *proinde*, therefore; *cum, quum*, seeing, since; *quandoquidem*, forasmuch as.
7. *Final or Perfective*; as, *ut, uti*, that, to the end that.

8. *Conditional*;



8. *Conditional*; as, *si, sin, if; dum, modo, dummodo*, provided, upon condition that; *siquidem*, if indeed.

9. *Exceptive or Restrictive*; as, *ni, nisi*, unless, except.

10. *Diminutive*; as, *saltem, certe*, at least.

11. *Suspensive or Dubitative*; as, *an, anne, num*, whether; *ne, annon*, whether, not; *necne*, or not.

12. *Expletive*; as, *autem, vero*, now, truly; *quidem, equidem*, indeed.

13. *Ordinative*; as, *deinde*, thereafter; *denique*, finally; *insuper*, moreover; *cæterum*, moreover, but, however.

14. *Declarative*; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum*, &c. to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne*, &c. are either *interrogative adverbs*; as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or *suspensive conjunctions*; as, *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some *conjunctions*, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *nam, et, aut, nec, si*, &c.: some stand in the second place, or sometimes in the third; as, *autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*; and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *namque, etenim, siquidem, ergo, igitur, itaque*, &c. Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive*, and *Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*, because, when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable; as in the following verse,

*Indoctusque pilæ, discive, trochive, quiescit.* Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

*Arbuteos fætus montanæque fraga legebant.* Ovid.



## SENTENCES.

A sentence is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as,

*I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another; *namely*, that of *Concord* or *Agreement*; and that of *Government* or *Influence*.

*Concord*, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

*Government*, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

## General principles of SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence, there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.
3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.
4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

N

8. The



8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

10. The genitive or possessive case in English always depends on some noun ; and the objective or accusative case is put after a verb active or a preposition.

All sentences are either simple or compound.

*Syntax* therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

### SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple sentence is that which has but one nominative, and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The SUBJECT is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The ATTRIBUTE expresses what we affirm concerning the subject ; as,

*The boy reads his lesson* : Here, “the boy,” is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of ; “reads his lesson,” is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home*. Here we have still the same subject, “the boy,” marked by the character of “diligent,” added to it ; and the same attribute, “reads his lesson,” with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, “carefully,” “at home.”

### C O N C O R D.

The following words agree together in sentences, 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.



I. *Agreement of one substantive with another.*

RULE I. Substantives signifying the same thing, agree in case ; as,

<i>Cicero orator,</i>	Cicero the orator.
<i>Ciceronis oratoris,</i>	Of Cicero the orator, &c.
<i>Urbs Athene,</i>	The city Athens.
<i>Urbis Athenarum,</i>	Of the city Athens, &c.

2. *Agreement of an adjective with a substantive.*

2. An adjective agrees with a substantive, in gender, number, and case ; as,

<i>Bonus vir,</i>	A good man.
<i>Casta femina,</i>	A chaste woman.
<i>Dulce pomum,</i>	A sweet apple.

Obs. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive ; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender ; as, *triste*, to wit *negotium*, a sad thing, Virg. ; *Tuum scire*, the same with, *tua scientia*, thy knowledge, Pers. We sometimes however find the substantive understood in the feminine ; as, *Non posteriores feram, sup. partes*, Ter.

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive ; as, *Certus amicus*, A sure friend ; *Bona ferina*, Good venison ; *Summum bonum*, The chief good : *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*.

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus, medius, ultimus, imus, summus*, &c. usually signify *the first part, the middle part, &c.* of any thing ; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night ; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. In English, the adjective generally goes before the noun ; as, *a wise man, a good horse* ; unless something depend upon the adjective ; as, *food convenient for me* ; or the adjective be emphatical ; as, *Alexander the Great*.

Obs. 5. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first ; as, *vir clarissimus, res præstantissima*, &c.



Obs. 6. A substantive in English, sometimes supplies the place of an adjective; as, *sea-water, land-fowl; forest-trees, &c.*; and even when no hyphen is marked; as, *the London Chronicle, the Edinburgh Magazine.*

### 3. Agreement of a verb with a nominative.

3. A verb agrees with the nominative before it in number and person; as,

*Ego lego,*

I read.

*Tu scribis,*

You write.

*Præceptor docet,*

The master teaches.

Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos* of the second person; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction.

Obs. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*; The sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens detained the dictator for a long time, Liv. 7. 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet, id est esse regem*, Sall.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant*, or *fugere cæperunt*.

Obs. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat*, or *stant*; The multitude stands, or stand. A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals, of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi*. Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. *Æn. vii. 624.*

Obs.



Obs. 5. The neuter pronoun *it* in English, is often the nominative to the verb when we speak either of persons or things; as, *It is I; it is he; it appears;* in Latin, *Ego sum, ille est, &c.*

Obs. 6. We often say in English, *You was*, instead of, *You were*; which is a very great inaccuracy in grammar; but so frequently used, particularly in common conversation, that it seems to be in a manner established by custom.

4. *Accusative before the infinitive.*

4. The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

*Gaudes te valere,* I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse* must frequently be supplied, especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercitum caesum fusumque cognovi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus suscepturum*, scil. *me esse*, Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, or *quin*; as, *Guadeo te valere*, i. e. *quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem*: *Jubeo vos bene sperare*, or *ut bene speretis*: *Prohibeo eum exire*, or *ne exeat*: *Non dubito eum fecisse*, or much better, *quin fecerit*. *Scia quod filius amet*, Plaut. for *filium amare*.



5. *The same case after a verb as before it.*

5. Any verb may have the same case after it as before it, when both words refer to the same thing ; as,

<i>Ego sum discipulus,</i>	I am a scholar.
<i>Tu vocaris Joannes,</i>	You are named John.
<i>Illa incedit regina,</i>	She walks as a queen.
<i>Scio illum haberi sapientem,</i>	I know that he is esteemed wife.

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another ; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs ; as, *Sum, fio, forem,* and *existo ; eo, venio, fio, sedeo, evado, &c.*

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor,* to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constituor, salutor, designor, &c.*

These, and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative ; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos,* scil. *se ;* It is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or acc. promiscuously ; as, *Cupio dici doctus* or *doctum,* sc. *me dici.*

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed betwixt two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former ; as, *Dos est decem talenta,* Her dowry is ten talents, Ter. *Omnia pontus erant,* Ovid. But sometimes with the latter ; as, *Amanitium iræ amoris integratio est.* The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love. Ovid. So, when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse ; as, *Oppidum est appellatum Possidonia,* Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive ; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda,* Cic.

Obs.



Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an imperfect verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy; or, *licet mihi esse beatum*, me being understood; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beatum*, One may be happy, *scil. alicui* or *homini*.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; thus, *Retulit Ajax Jovis esse pronepos*, for *Se esse pronepotem*; Ovid. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *te vocari sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. i. 16. *Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens*; Ovid. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse socer*; Lucan.

Obs. 6. The verb *to be* in English, has always a nominative case after it; as, *It was I*: unless it be of the infinitive mode; as, *I took it to be him*. We often use however this impropriety in common conversation, *It is me*, *It was him*; for, *It is I*, *It was he*.

## G O V E R N M E N T.

### I. The GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

6. One Substantive governs another in the genitive, when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former; as,

<i>Amor Dei,</i>	The love of God.
<i>Lex naturæ,</i>	The law of nature.
<i>Domus Cæsaris.</i>	The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son: and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis*; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him:



him : So *Caritas patris*, signifies either, The affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense ; thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur* ; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood ; as, *Hecloëris Andromache*, scil. *uxor* ; *Ventum est ad Vestræ*, scil. *ædem* or *templum* ; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive ; particularly among the poets ; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended ; Virg.

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions ; as, *Amicitia*, *Inimicitia cum aliquo* ; *Amor in*, vel *erga*, *aliquem* ; *Cura de aliquo*, &c.

Obs. 6. Substantives derived from verbs are found sometimes, though more rarely, governing the case of their primitives ; as, *Spectatio ludos*, Plaut. *Traditio alteri*, Cic. *Insidiæ consuli*, Sall. *Reditio domum*, Cæs.

Obs. 7. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of* ; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to Avernus ; *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law.

Obs. 8. SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive, and may be turned into possessives, like substantive nouns ; as, *domus mei*, or much more frequently, *mea*, my house.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, *nostrum*, *vestrum* ; but we use their possessives, when an active sense is expressed : as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved ; *amor meus*, my love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find however the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively ; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, Ter. *Labor mei*, My labour, Plaut.

The possessives *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *nostrus*, *vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive ; as, *Pectus tuum hominis simplicis*, Cic. 2. Phil. *Noster duorum eventus*, Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*, Cic. *Mea scripta timentis*, &c. Hor. *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, Cic. ad Att. lib. 11. Ep. 15.

The reciprocals *sui* and *suus* are used, when the action of



of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon its nominative: as, *Cato interfecit se; Miles defendit suam vitam; Dicit se scripturum esse.* We find however *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus,* Cic.

7. If the latter substantive have an adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, it may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

<i>Vir summæ prudentiæ, or</i>	}	A man of great wisdom.
<i>summâ prudentiâ,</i>		
<i>Puer probæ indolis, or pro-</i>	}	A boy of a good disposition.
<i>bâ indole,</i>		

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum, de, ex, in, &c.* Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ,* is the same with *vir cum summa prudentia.*

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formica laboris,* The laborious ant: in others only the ablative; as, *Es bono animo,* Be of good courage. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens eximiâ spe, summæ virtutis,* Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative: thus, we say either, *Vir præstantis ingenii,* or *præstanti ingenio;* or *Vir præstans ingenio,* and sometimes *præstans ingenii.* Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum,* or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdöche;* as, *Miles fractus membra,* i. e. *fractus secundum or quod ad membra,* or *habens membra fracta.*

### 8. Adjectives taken as Substantives.

8. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; as,

*Multum pecuniæ,*  
*Quid rei?*

Much money.  
What is the matter?

Obs.



Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, and hardly ever those which end in *is* and *e*.

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viarum, Opaca locorum, Telluris operta, loca* being understood. So *Amara curarum, acuta belli*, Horat. sc. *negotia*. An adjective indeed of any gender may have a genitive after it, wit' a substantive understood; as, *Amicus Caesaris, Patria Ulyssis, &c.*

### *Opus* and *Usus*.

9. *Opus* and *usus* require the ablative; as,

*Est opus pecuniâ,*  
*Usus viribus,*

There is need of money.  
Use for strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes also govern the genitive.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, We need a general, Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*, Id.

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturata*, Need of haste; *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.



## II. GOVERNMENT of ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

10. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

<i>Avidus gloriæ,</i>	Desirous of glory.
<i>Ignarus fraudis,</i>	Ignorant of fraud.
<i>Memor beneficiorum,</i>	Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong,

1. Adjectives of desire; as, *cupīdus, avārus, studiōsus*.
2. ——— of knowledge; as, *perītus, gnarus, prudens*.
3. ——— of ignorance; as, *nescius, rudis, incertus*.
4. ——— of guilt; as, *consciū, reus, manifestus*,
5. Verbals in *ax* and *ns*; as, *edax, capax, ferax; amans, cupiens, appetens, &c.*
6. To which may be referred, *amūlus, munificus, parcus, prodīgus*, and many others.

Obs. 1. Verbals in *ns* are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *Patiens algōris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem*.

Obs. 2. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causā*, *in re*, or *in negotio*, or some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis*, i. e. *causā* or *in re laudis*, Desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But perhaps the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus, *Studiosus pecuniæ*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

11. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

<i>Aliquis philosophorum,</i>	Some one of the philosophers.
<i>Senior fratrum,</i>	The elder of the brothers.
	<i>Doctissimus</i>



<i>Doctissimus Romanorum,</i>	{ The most learned of the Romans.
<i>Quis nostrum?</i>	
<i>Una musarum,</i>	
<i>Octavus sapientum,</i>	
	Which of us?
	One of the muses.
	The eighth of the wise men.

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. Rarely with the latter; as, *Delphinus animalum velocissimum*, Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as, *Unus de fratribus*; or, by the poets, with *ante* or *inter*; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes*, for *omnium*, Virg.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*, Cic.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two; Superlatives, when we speak of more than two; as, *Major fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two*; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quis*, *unus*, *alius*, *nullus*, with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you *two*; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you *three*: but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

## 2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

12. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, govern the dative; as,

<i>Utilis bello,</i>	Profitable for war.
<i>Perniciōsus reipublicæ,</i>	Hurtful to the commonwealth.
<i>Similis patri,</i>	Like his father.

Obs. 1. The dative is put after adjectives, to express the object to which their signification refers. Almost every adjective



adjective therefore in the Latin tongue may in this sense have a dative after it.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied ; as, *Similis patri*, Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise a dative after them, when they either express quality, or are applied to a whole kind, without any word in English to restrict them ; as, *Ille est pater, dux, vel filius mihi*, He is father, leader, or son to me : so *Præsidium reis, decus amicis, &c.* Horat. *Exitium pecori*, Virg. *Virtutibus hostis*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive \* : *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius*, and *adversus* ; as, *Similis tibi*, or *tui*, Like to you, or the like of you ; *Superstes patri* or *patrīs* ; *Conscius facinori* or *facinoris*. *Conscius* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative ; as, *Conscius mihi sceleris*.

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying fitness or unfitness have after them either the dative, or the accusative with the preposition *ad* ; as, *Aptus, ineptus bello*, or *ad bellum*.

Obs. 5. Many other adjectives, which govern the dative, are likewise construed with prepositions ; as, *Difficilis, durus, gravis, benignus, gratus, iniquus, &c. alicui*, or *in aliquem* ; *Alienus alicui, alicujus, ab aliquo*, or *aliquo* without the preposition.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative ; as, *Pronus, propensus, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram*, or *in iram*.

Obs. 7. *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative ; as, *Propior montem*, scil. *ad*, Sal. *Proximus finem*, Liv.

13. Verbals in *bilis* and *dus* govern the dative ; as,

*Amandus vel amabilis omnibus*, To be loved by all men.

\* *Affinis, similis, communis, par, propriusque, Finitimus, fidus, conterminus, atque superstes, Conscius, æqualis, contrarius, adversusque, Cum terno modò juncta leges, modò cum genitivo : Quos alienus item dat, & A præcunte Latinum.*



Obs. Verbals in *bilis* and *dus* usually govern the dative of a person, and not of a thing; and those in *dus* are likewise construed with the preposition *a*; as, *Amandus mihi*, or *a me*.

### 3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

14. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

*Dignus honore,*  
*Contentus parvo,*  
*Præditus virtute,*  
*Captus oculis,*  
*Fretus viribus,*  
*Ortus regibus,*

Worthy of honour.  
 Content with little.  
 Endued with virtue.  
 Blind.  
 Trusting to his strength.  
 Descended of kings.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood: as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, Sallust. *Editus de nympa*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avorum*, Virg. So *Maçte esto*, or *maçi esote virtutis* or *virtute*, Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Suberem maçte virtute esse*, Liv. In the last example *maçte* seems to be used adverbially.

### 4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

15. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

*Plenus iræ* or *irâ*, Full of anger.  
*Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives are usually construed with the genitive only: *Benignus*, *exsors*, *impos*, *liberalis*, *munificus*, &c.

Obs. 2. The following with the ablative only: *Beatus*, *differtus*, *mutilus*, *tumidus*, *turgidus*, &c.



## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

## § I. VERBS governing only one case.

## I. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

16. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive ; as,

<i>Est regis,</i>	It belongs to the king.
<i>Est insipientis,</i>	It is the property of a fool.
<i>Est militum,</i>	It is the duty of soldiers.

EXCEPTION. *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted ; as,

<i>Tuum est,</i>	It is your duty.
<i>Scio tuum esse,</i>	I know that is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner, as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood ; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* which are sometimes expressed ; as, *Munus est principum ; Tuum est hoc munus*, Cic. *Neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis puto*, Ter. In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated ; as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these ; *Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patrandi belli*, scil. *causâ* or *facta*, Sall. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est*, for *ad æquandam libertatem pertinet*, Liv.

17. *Misereor, miseresco*, and *Satago*, govern the genitive ; as,

<i>Miserere civium tuorum,</i>	Pity your countrymen.
<i>Satagit rerum suarum,</i>	{ He is sufficiently employed about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify



nify some affection of the mind, as, *Ango, decipior, fallo, pendeo, studeo, fastidio*; in like manner, *abstineo, desino, regno, &c.* But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed. Thus, *Abstineto irarum*, for *iris*, or *ab iris*, Horat. *Justitiæ prius mirer*, for *justitiam*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs: thus, *Misereor fratris*, scil. *causâ*; *Angor animi*, scil. *dolore*, or *anxietate*.

## 2. Verbs governing the Dative.

18. *Est* taken for *Habeo*, to have, governs the dative of a person; as,

<i>Est mihi liber,</i>	I have a book.
<i>Sunt mihi libri,</i>	I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner *desum* instead of *careo*; as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book; *Libri desunt mihi*; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c. But this rule perhaps ought to be comprehended under the following more general one,

19. *Sum*, and its compounds, govern the dative, except *possum*; as,

<i>Præfuit exercitui,</i>	He commanded the army.
<i>Adfuit precibus,</i>	He was present at prayers.

20. A verb signifying advantage or disadvantage, governs the dative; as,

<i>Fortuna favet fortibus,</i>	Fortune favours the brave.
<i>Nemini noceas,</i>	Do hurt to no one.

To this rule belong,

1. Verbs signifying to profit or hurt; as, *Proficio, placeo, officio, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo, &c.* The five last likewise govern the accusative, when their action is exerted upon any object, and not merely with relation to it: thus, *Metuo, timeo tibi*, I fear for you,



or I am solicitous about your safety ; but *Timeo te*, I fear you, or I am afraid of you : so *Consulo tibi*, I consult your interest ; but *Consulo te*, I ask your advice.

2. Verbs of favouring and envying, helping and resisting ; as, *Faveo*, *indulgeo*, *invideo*, *auxilior*, *resisto*, &c.

3. Verbs of commanding and obeying, threatening and trusting ; as, *Impero*, *obedio*, *minor*, *confido*, &c.

4. Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male* ; as, *Satisfacio*, *malefacio*, *benedico*, &c.

5. Verbs compounded with these ten propositions, *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *sub*, and *super* ; as, *Adsto*, *antesto*, *colludo*, *insto*, *intercedo*, *obsto*, *posthabeo*, *præsto*, *succedo*, *supervenio*, &c.

In short almost every verb in Latin may have the dative after it, when relation to any thing is expressed.

*Jubeo*, *lædo*, *offendo*, and *juvo* govern the accusative.

Obs. 1. Many of the above verbs are differently construed, particularly those which are compounded with a preposition ; as, *Accedere muris*, *muros*, *ad* or *in muros* : so *subire*, *succedere*, &c. *Accumbere epulis*, or *in epulo* ; *Antecedere*, *anteire alicui*, or *aliquem* ; *Obstrepere auribus* or *aures* ; *Indulgeo tibi* or *te*, *aliquid alicui* ; *Præstare omnibus* or *omnes* ; *illudere alicui*, *aliquem*, *in aliquem*, or *in aliquo* ; *Occumbere morti*, *mortem*, or *morte* ; *Supersedere labori*, or more frequently *labore* ; *Fidere alicui*, or *aliquo* ; *Studere aliquid*, To desire ; *Studere alicui*, To favour any one ; *Studere alicui rei*, *in aliquam rem*, *in aliqua re*, To apply to any thing. We likewise find in antient authors, *Nocere hominem*, Plaut. ; *Parcere pecuniam*, ibid. But these examples are not to be imitated.

Obs. 2. Many verbs among the poets govern the dative, which are usually construed with a preposition ; as, *Contendo*, *certo*, *pugno alicui*, for *cum aliquo* ; *Differre*, *distare rei alicui*, for *a re aliqua* ; *Videor nulli*, for *a nullò* ; *Amatur tibi*, for *a te* : and so in many others.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad* ; as, *Eo*, *vado*, *curro*, *festino ad scholam* ; *Pertinet*, *spectat ad me* : sometimes however among the poets they are construed with the dative ; as, *It clamor cælo*, for *ad cælum*, Virg.

Obs. 4. Verbs which govern only the dative, are either substantive or neuter verbs ; for when active verbs have the



the dative after them, they likewise govern an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 5. Though in rendering the dative of the Latins into English, the particles *to* or *for* are often not expressed, yet their meaning seems generally to be implied.

Obs. 6. A great many verbs have a different signification, according as they are differently construed. Of these such as most frequently occur, are included in the following list.

VERBS variously construed, according to their different signification.

Accedo tibi, *i. e.* assentior : *item*,  
accresco.

Accedo ad te, *i. e.* adeo *vel* venio.

Æmulator tibi, *i. e.* invideo.

Æmulator te, *i. e.* imitor.

Animadverto aliquid, *i. e.* observo.

Animadverto in aliquem, *i. e.* punio.

Ausculdo tibi, *i. e.* obtempero.

Ausculdo te, *i. e.* audio.

Caveo tibi, *i. e.* prospicio tibi, *ut amico*.

Caveo te, *i. e.* vito, *ut inimicum*.

Cavere de re aliqua, *i. e.* cautionem dare.

Cedere alicui, *i. e.* locum dare.

Cedere jure suo, *i. e.* de jure suo decedere.

Consulo tibi, *i. e.* prospicio *vel* provideo. *Sic*, consulo in te.

Consulo te, *i. e.* consilium à te peto.

Consulo boni, *i. e.* bonum judico.

Convenit hoc mihi, *i. e.* conveniens est mihi.

Convenit mihi cum illo, *i. e.* cum illo consentio.

Conveniam hominem, *i. e.* hominem alloquar.

Cupio tibi, *i. e.* faveo.

Cupio aliquid, *i. e.* desidero, *seu* expeto.

Deficit mihi, *i. e.* deest.

Deficit me, *i. e.* destituit.

Deficere ab aliquo, *i. e.* desciscere.

Detrahere alicui, *i. e.* ejus famam minuere.

Detrahere aliquem, *i. e.* ex superiore loco trahere.

Do tibi literas, *i. e.* alii perferendas.

Do ad te literas, *i. e.* ad te scribo.

Fœnero *vel* fœneror tibi, *i. e.* do tibi ad usuram *vel* lucrum.

Fœneror abs te, *i. e.* fœnori accipio, *seu* ad usuram.

Horrere alicui, *i. e.* timere alicui, *Plin.*

Horrere aliquem, *i. e.* horrore concuti propter aliquem, *tantum* hostem.

Imponere alicui, *i. e.* decipere aliquem.

Imponere aliquid alicui, *i. e.* superimponere, *ut onus*.

Manere *absolutè*, *i. e.* commorari.

Manere aliquem, *i. e.* expectare.

Metuo tibi, *i. e.* sollicitus de te sum, *ut amico*.

Metuo te, *vel* à te, *i. e.* *ut hostem*, *ne mihi noceas*.

Peto aliquid alicui, *i. e.* cupio dari.

Peto abs te, *i. e.* rogo.

Peto pœnas de aliquo, *i. e.* fumo supplicium de aliquo.

Peto aliquem gladio, *i. e.* adior *vel* percutio.

Peto locum, *i. e.* adeo *vel* tendo ad locum.

Præire alicui, *i. e.* ante aliquem ire.

Præire verba, *i. e.* ea prius proferre ab alio mox recitanda.

Præstare



Præstare alicui silentium, <i>i. e.</i> dare, concedere.	Renuncio consulem, <i>i. e.</i> declaro, proclamo.
Præstare aliis <i>vel</i> alios virtute, <i>i. e.</i> antecellere.	Solvo tibi aliquid, <i>i. e.</i> persolvo, numero.
Præstare se virum, <i>i. e.</i> præbere <i>vel</i> exhibere.	Solvo aliquem, <i>i. e.</i> vinculis libero.
Præstare culpam <i>vel</i> damnum, <i>i. e.</i> in se transferre.	Sufficere alicui, <i>i. e.</i> fatis esse.
Præstabo eum facturum, <i>i. e.</i> recipio, <i>vel</i> fidejubeo eum esse facturum.	Sufficere alicui arma, <i>i. e.</i> subministrare.
Prospicio, provideo, tuæ salutis, <i>i. e.</i> salutem tuam procuro.	Sufficere aliquem, <i>i. e.</i> in alterius locum substituere.
Prospicio, provideo periculum, <i>i. e.</i> prævideo.	Temperare linguæ, manibus, <i>i. e.</i> modum imponere.
Recipio tibi, <i>i. e.</i> promitto. <i>Sic</i> , recipio in me.	Temperare cædibus, & à cædibus, <i>i. e.</i> abstinere.
Recipio me in locum, <i>i. e.</i> confero.	Temperare orbem, vires, ratem, <i>i. e.</i> regere, <i>vel</i> intra ordinem <i>ac</i> mensuram suam cohibere.
Refero tibi, <i>i. e.</i> narro.	Timeo tibi, <i>ac</i> te : <i>ut</i> , metuo.
Refero ad senatum, <i>i. e.</i> Senatui consultandum propono.	Vacare rei alicui, <i>i. e.</i> operam dare. <i>Sic</i> , in <i>vel</i> ad aliquam rem, <i>Ovid.</i>
Referre aliquem, <i>i. e.</i> alicui similem esse.	Vacare ab officio, <i>i. e.</i> cessare, otiosum esse.
Renuncio muneri, hospitio, <i>i. e.</i> repudio munus, hospitium.	Vacare culpâ, <i>i. e.</i> carere.
	Vacat mihi, <i>i. e.</i> otium est mihi.

### 3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

21. A verb signifying actively governs the accusative ; as,

*Ama Deum,*

Love God.

*Reverere parentes,*

Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own ; as, *Ire iter* or *viam* ; *pugnare pugnam* or *prælium* : or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense ; as, *Corydon ardebat Alexin*, scil. *propter*, *i. e.* *vehementer amabat*, Virg. *Currimus æquor*, scil. *per*, Id.

Obs. 2. These accusatives, *hoc*, *id*, *quid*, *aliquid*, *quicquid*, *nihil*, *idem*, *illud*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *multa*, *pauca*, &c. are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood ; as, *Id lacrumat*, Ter.

Obs. 3. The accusative is often understood. *Tum prora avertit*, sc. *se*, Virg. *Flumina præcipitant*, sc. *se*, Ibid. *Obiit*, sc. *mortem*, Ter. *Cum faciam vitulâ*, sc. *sacra*, Virg.

22. Recordor,



22. *Recordor, meminī, reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive ; as,

*Recordor lectionis* or *lectionem*, I remember the lesson.  
*Obliviscor injuriæ* or *injuriam*, I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence ; as, *Memini videre virginem*, Ter. *Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset*, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de* ; as, *Memini alicujus*, or *de aliquo*. So *recordor*, when it signifies to recollect ; as, *Velim scire ecquid de te recordere*, Cic.

#### 4. Verbs governing the Ablative.

23. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative ; as,

*Abundat divitiis*, He abounds in riches.  
*Caret omni culpa*, He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, scateo*, &c. ; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, destituor*, &c.

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive ; as, *Eget æris*, Horat.

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood ; and sometimes we find it expressed ; as *Vacat a culpa*, Liv.

24. *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative ; as,

*Utitur fraude*, He uses deceit.  
*Abutitur libris*, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, victito, consto, laboro*, for *male me habeo, pascor, epulor, nitor*, &c.

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive ; as, *Potiri urbis*, Sal. And we always say, *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command ; never *rebus, imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes have an accusative ; as, *Potiri urbem*, Cic. *Munera fungi*,



*fungi*, Tacit. *Pascuntur silvas*, Virg. And in antient writers *utor*, *abutor* and *fruor*; as, *Uti consilium*, Plaut. *Operam abutitur*, Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative; as, *Depascitur artus*, Virg.

## § 2. VERBS governing two cases.

### 1. Verbs governing two Datives.

25. *Sum* taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

*Est mihi voluptati*, It is, or brings a pleasure to me.

Obf. 1. Two datives are also put after \* *habeo*, *do*, *verto*, *relinquo*, *tribuo*, *fore*, *duco*, and some others; as, *Ducitur honori tibi*, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. So, *Misit mihi muneri*; *Dedit mihi dono*; *Habet sibi laudi*, &c.

Obf. 2. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, *Est exitium pecori*, for *exitio*; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dono*; *Dare nuptum*, or *nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood.

Obf. 3. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio*, &c. scil. *mihi*, *alicui*, *hominibus*, or some such word.

Obf. 4. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the Genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

### 2. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

26. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative and genitive; as,

*Arguit me furti*, He accuses me of theft.  
*Meipsum inertiae condemno*, I condemn myself of laziness.

\* EST AFFERRE notans, *habeo*, *do*, *verto*, *relinquo*.

Sæpè dabunt geminos, *tribuo*, *fore*, *ducoque*, *ternos*.



<i>Illum homicidii absolvunt,</i>	{	They acquit him of man-
		slaughter.
<i>Monet me officii,</i>	{	He admonishes me of my
		duty.

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing, condemning, and acquitting, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of the crime or punishment.

Obs. 2. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de*; as, *Monere aliquem officii*, or *de officio*; *Accusare aliquem furti*, or *de furto*. *Crimen* and *caput* are usually put in the ablative, without a preposition; as, *Damnare aliquem crimine* or *capite*: and we always say, *Plectere*, *punire capite*, never *capitis*. But many verbs of accusing are not construed with the genitive: thus we say, *Culpare*, *reprehendere alicujus avaritiam*, and not *culpare aliquem avaritiæ*.

Obs. 3. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc*, *illud*, *istud*, *id*, *unum*, *multa*, &c. as, *Moneo, accuso te illud*: We seldom however say, *Errorum te moneo*, but *erroris*, or *de errore*.

27. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni*, *parvi*, *nihili*; as,

*Æstimo te magni,*                      I value you much.

Obs. 1. Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo*, *existimo*, *duco*, *facio*, *habeo*, *pendo*, *puto*, &c. They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti*, *quantum*, *pluris*, *majoris*, *minoris*, *minimi*, *plurimi*, *maximi*, *nauci*, *pili*, *assis*, *nihili*, *teruncii*, *hujus*.

Obs. 2. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magno*, *permagno*, *parvo*, scil. *pretio*; and also *nihilo*. We likewise say, *Pro nihilo habeo*, *puto*, *duco*.

Obs. 3. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo*; as, *Hoc consulo boni*, I take this in good part.

Obs. 4. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti*, scil. *de crimine furti*; *Æstimo rem magni*, scil. *pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii*; *Consulo boni*, i. e. *statuo* or *censeo esse factum*



*factum* or *munus boni viri*, or *animi*; *Monere aliquem officii*, i. e. *officii causâ*, or *de re* or *negotio officii*.

### 3. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.

28. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

<i>Compāro Virgilium Homero,</i>	I compare Virgil to Homer.
<i>Suum cuique tribuito,</i>	Give every one his own.
<i>Narras fabulam surdo,</i>	{ You tell a story to a deaf man.
<i>Eripuit me morti,</i>	

Obs. 1. Any active verb may govern the accusative and the dative, *when, together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted*; as, *Legam lectionem tibi*, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me.

Obs. 2. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum alia*, or *comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti, morte*, a or *ex morte*: *Mittere epistolam alicui*, or *ad aliquem*: *Intendere telum alicui*, or *in aliquem*: *Incidere æri, in æs*, or *in are*: and so in many others.

Obs. 3. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as, *Circumdare mœnia oppido*, or *oppidum mœnibus*; *Intercludere commeatum alicui*, or *aliquem commeatu*; *Donare, prohibere rem alicui*, or *aliquem re*; *Mactare hostiam Deo*, or *Deum hostiâ*; *Impertiri salutem alicui*, or *aliquem salute*; *Interdixit Galliam Romanis*, or *Romanos Galliâ*; *Induere, exuere vestem sibi*, or *se veste*. *Levare dolorem alicui*; *dolorem alicujus*; *aliquem dolore*. *Minari aliquid alicui*, or sometimes *alicui aliquo*, Cic.

Obs. 4. *Hortor*, and *invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, laceſſo*, and verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as, *Ad laudem milites hortatur*; *Ad prætorem hominem traxit*, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as,



as, *Inferre Deos Latio*, for *in Latium*, Virg. *Invitare aliquem hospitio*, or *in hospitium*, Cic.

Obf. 5. The accusative is sometimes understood ; as, *Nubere alicui*, scil. *se* ; *Cedere alicui*, scil. *locum* ; *Detrahere alicui*, scil. *laudem* ; *Ignoscere alicui*, scil. *culpam*. And in English the particle *to* is often omitted ; as, *Dedit mihi librum*, He gave me a book, *for to me*.

#### 4. Verbs governing two Accusatives.

29. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing ; as,

*Poscimus te pacem*, We beg peace of thee.  
*Docuit me Grammaticam*, He taught me grammar.

Obf. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives ; as, *Celavit me hanc rem*, He concealed this matter from me ; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi*, or *celavit me de hac re*.

Obf. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition : as, *Rogare rem ab aliquo* ; *Docere aliquem de re* : but *instruo*, *instituo*, *formo*, *conformo*, have after them the ablative, without a preposition ; as, *Instituere aliquem artibus*, or *ad artes*.

Obf. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

#### 5. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

30. Verbs of loading, binding, cloathing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative ; as,

*Onerat naves auro*, He loads the ships with gold.

Obf. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed ; as, *Solvere aliquem ex catenis*, Cic.

Obf. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive ; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritatis implet*, Liv



## THE GOVERNMENT OF PASSIVE VERBS.

31. When the active governs two cases, the passive retains the latter case ; as,

<i>Accusor furti,</i>	I am accused of theft.
<i>Virgilius comparatur Homero,</i>	Virgil is compared to Homer.
<i>Doceor grammaticam,</i>	I am taught grammar.
<i>Navis oneratur auro,</i>	The ship is loaded with gold.

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with a preposition ; as, *Amatur a me* : but sometimes they govern the dative, especially among the poets ; as, *Audior tibi*, I am heard by you ; *Probatur omnibus*, He is approved of by all ; *Neque cernitur nulli*, Nor is he seen by any one.

Obs. 2. *Induor, amior, cingor, accingor* ; also *exuor* and *discingor* are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice ; as, *Induitur vestem*, or *veste*.

Obs. 3. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice ; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own ; as, *Pugna pugnata est*, Cic. *Bellum militabitur*, Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely ; as, *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venit, &c. a nobis, ab illis, &c.* We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me, vel ab aliquo* ; I or any person may live well.

## THE GOVERNMENT OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

32. An impersonal verb governs the dative ; as,

<i>Expedit reipublicæ,</i>	It is profitable for the state.
----------------------------	---------------------------------

Obs. 1. Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative ; as, *Favetur mihi*, I am favoured, hardly ever *Ego faveor*. So *nocetur mihi, imperatur mihi, &c.*

Obs. 2. These verbs, *Potest, capit, incipit, desinit, debet*, and *solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with im-  

P
personal



personal verbs ; as, *Non potest credi tibi*, You cannot be believed ; *Mihi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt ; *Negat jucunde posse vivi sine virtute*, Cic. *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra*.

Obs. 3. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally ; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res*, vel *de hac re*, vel *hujus rei*, scil. *memoria* ; This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res*, vel *de hac re*.

Obs. 4. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English ; as, *It rains*, *it shines*, &c. which shews that there is no such thing in language as impersonal verbs properly so called. Impersonal verbs in Latin are usually either construed with the infinitive, or connected with some part of a sentence, which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative : And when they stand by themselves, *negotium*, or some other word of a similar signification to their own, may be understood.

Except. 1. *Refert* and *interest* require the genitive ; as,

*Refert patris,*

It concerns my father.

*Interest omnium,*

It is the interest of all.

But *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter ; as,

*Non mea refert,*

It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, &c. to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus interest*, or *cujus interest*, from *cujus*, *a*, *um*.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id*, *hoc*, *illud*, &c. and with these genitives, *Tanti*, *quantum*, *magni*, *permagni*, *parvi*, *pluris* ; as, *Hoc parvi refert* ; *Illud mea magni interest*, Cic. But in other cases they are commonly construed with adverbs ; as, *magis*, *maxime*, *multum*, *parum*, *minus refert*.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, &c. likewise agree ; as, *Interest Ciceronis*, i. e. *est inter negotia Ciceronis* : *Refert patris*, i. e. *refert se hæc res ad negotia patris* : So *interest mea*, *est inter negotia mea*.

Except.



Except. 2. These five *miseret*, *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

*Miseret me tui,*

I pity you.

*Pœnitet me peccati,*

I repent of my sin.

*Tædet me vitæ,*

I am weary of life.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse*, or *quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as, *Scelerum si bene pœnitet*, scil. *nos*. Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret*, *pœnitet*, &c. are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc*, *id*, *quod*, &c. as, *Ipse sui miseret*, Lucr.; *Nonne hæc te pudet*, Ter.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives, as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me*, scil. *secundum*, or *quod ad*. Ter. Heaut. IV. 5. 1.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*, Ter. We likewise find *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*, Ter.; *Misereatur te fratrum*, Cicero.

Except. 3. *Decet*, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive; as,

*Delectat me studere,*

It delights me to study.

Obs. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parva decent*, Hor. And properly they should all be considered as personal and active verbs, even when construed with the infinitive: except *oportet*, which is the same with *opus est*; and therefore is very rarely used personally, and almost never in an active sense; thus,



*oportet me studere*, is much the same with *opus est me studere*; but *delectat me studere*, is the same with *studium* or *studere delectat me*.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*, Ter.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as, *Sibi quisque consulat oportet*, Cic. or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit, mansum oportuit*, Ter.

## The CONSTRUCTION of the INFINITIVE.

33. One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

*Cupio discere*,

I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*, Quinctil. and sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus equum fumantiaolvere colla*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam*, scil. *decet*, or *par est*, Virg. *Videre est*. *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*, Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socratem fidibus docuit*, scil. *canere*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, The name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive, as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own; and likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare*, for *cantandi*, or *cantus*, Virg. 2. In the dative, *Paratus servire*, for *servituti*, Sall. 3. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere*, for *artem fallendi*, Horat. 4. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum*, for *vita nostra*. 5. In the ablative, *Dignus amari*, for *amore*, Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive a different construction is often used after verbs of *doubting*, *willing*, *ordering*, *fearing*, *hoping*; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitata facere*, or more frequently,



quently, *an, num, or utrum ita facturus sit; Dubitavit an faceret necne; Non dubito quin fecerit. Vis me facere, or ut faciam. Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur. Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias. Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem, Cic. Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur, Cæs.*

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it*: and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, *I am sent to complain, Mittor questum, or ut querar, &c. Ready to hear, Promptus ad audiendum; Time to read, Tempus legendi; Fit to swim, Aptus natando; Easy to say, Facile dictu; I am to write, Scripturus sum; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, Domus locanda; He was left to guard the city, Relictus est ut tueretur urbem. To in English is often taken absolutely; as, To confess the truth; To proceed; To conclude; that is, That I may confess the truth, &c.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, and SUPINES.

34. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,

*Amans virtutem,*  
*Carens fraude,*

Loving virtue.  
Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as, *Suspectus mihi*, Suspected by me; *Invisus mihi, &c.*

Obs. 2. These verbs, *do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo, comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to what we use in English; as, *Compertum habeo*, for *comperi*, I have found, Sall. *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam*; *Inventum tibi curabo, et adductum tuum Pamphilum*, i. e. *inveniam et adducam*, Ter.

Obs. 3. These verbs, *curo, habeo, mando, loco, conduco, &c.* are elegantly construed with the participle in *dus* instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curavi*, for *feri*, or *ut fieret*: *Columnas edificandas locavit*, Cic.



## The CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

35. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns ; as,

<i>Studendum est mihi,</i>	I must study.
<i>Tempus studendi,</i>	Time of study.
<i>Aptus studendo,</i>	Fit for studying.

1. The Gerund in *dum* of the nominative case, with the verb *est*, governs the dative ; as,

<i>Legendum est mihi,</i>	I must read.
<i>Moriendum est omnibus,</i>	All must die.

Obs. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity ; and may be resolved into *oportet*, *necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut* ; as, *Omnibus est moriendum*, or *Omnibus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur* ; or *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. When a verb goes before, the nominative is turned into the accusative, and *est* into *esse*.

Obs. 2. The dative is sometimes understood ; as, *Moriendum est*, scil. *mihi vel omnibus*.

2. The gerund in *di* is governed by substantives or adjectives ; as,

<i>Tempus legendi,</i>	Time of reading.
<i>Cupidus discendi,</i>	Desirous of learning.

Obs. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural ; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi*, for *agros*, Cic. *Copia spectandi comædiarum*, for *comædias*, Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

3. The gerund in *do* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness ; as,

<i>Charta utilis scribendo,</i>	Paper useful for writing.
---------------------------------	---------------------------

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood ; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par*, or *habilis*, He is a bankrupt, Cic.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs ; as, *Adesse scribendo*, Cic. *Aplat habendo*, Virg.

4. The



4. The gerund in *dum* of the accusative case, is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as,

*Promptus ad audiendum,* Ready to hear.  
*Attentus inter docendum,* Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, *Ante domandum*, Virg. *Ob absolvendum*, Cic. *Circa movendum*, Quintil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die.

5. The gerund in *do* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

*Pæna a peccando absterret,* { Punishment frightens from  
finning.

Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

*Memoria excolendo augetur,* { The memory is improved by  
exercising it.  
*Defessus sum ambulando,* I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*: only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidium vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperaretur*, to receive orders, Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius, Sic enim antiqui loquebantur*, Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperetur*. The gerund in English becomes a substantive, by prefixing the article to it, and then it is always to be construed with the preposition *of*; as, *He is employed in writing letters*, or *in the writing of letters*: but it is improper to say, *in the writing letters*, or *in writing of letters*.

*Gerunds turned into participles in dus.*

36. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly



elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case ; as,

By the Gerund.		By the Participle or Gerundive.
<i>Petendum est mihi pacem,</i>	} or more frequently {	<i>Pax est petenda mihi.</i>
<i>Tempus petendi pacem,</i>		<i>Tempus petendæ pacis.</i>
<i>Ad petendum pacem,</i>		<i>Ad petendam pacem.</i>
<i>A petendo pacem,</i>		<i>A petenda pace.</i>

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was.

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior* ; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis* : but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

## The CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

### 1. The Supine in *um*.

37. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion ; as,

*Abiit deambulatum,*                      He hath gone to walk.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly ; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat*, *ut se perdat*, He is bent on his own destruction, Ter. This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive ; as, *An credebas illam sine tuâ operâ iri deductum domum* ? Which may be thus resolved, *An credebas iri* (a te, vel ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum*, Ter.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion ; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam*, Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb ; as, *Venit oratum opem* : or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orandæ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opi c-randæ*.



*randæ.* 4. *Venit opem oraturus.* 5. *Venit qui opem oret.* 6. *Venit opem orare.* But of these the third and the last are seldom used.

## 2. The Supine in *u*.

38. The Supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

*Facile dictu,* Easy to tell, *or* to be told.

Obs. 1. The supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu, cognosci,* or *ad cognoscendum.*

Obs. 2. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

## The CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

### 1. The CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

39. Adverbs are joined to Verbs and participles, to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

<i>Bene scribit,</i>	He writes well.
<i>Fortiter pugnans,</i>	Fighting bravely.
<i>Servus egregie fidelis,</i>	A slave remarkably faithful.
<i>Satis bene,</i>	Well enough.

Obs. 1. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives; as, *Homerus plane orator,* Cic.

Obs. 2. The adverb for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as, *Nec non senserunt,* Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *Et senserunt,* And they did perceive. Examples however of the contrary of this occur in good authors both English and Latin. Thus two or three negative particles are placed before the subjunctive



tive mode to express a stronger negation. *Neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum*, Ter.

## THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

40. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive ; as,

<i>Pridie ejus diēi,</i>	The day before that day.
<i>Ubique gentium,</i>	Every where.
<i>Satis est verborum,</i>	There is enough of words.

Obs. 1. The adverbs of time are, *Interea, postea, inde, tunc*: of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds ; also *eo, huc, hucine, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem*: of quantity, *Abunde, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minime*. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive ; as, *Potentia gloriæque abunde adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriæ* : or *res, locus, or negotium* and a preposition, may be understood ; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci* ; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. *Pridie* and *postridie* are sometimes construed with the accusative ; as, *Postridie ejus diei*, or *diem* ; *Pridie Kalendarum*, or more frequently *Kalendas*, scil. *ante*.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative ; as, *En hostis*, or *hostem* ; *Ecce miserum hominem*, Cic. Sometimes a dative is added ; as, *Ecce tibi Strato*, Cic. *Ecce duas* (scil. aras) *tibi*, *Daphni*, Virg. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce* ; as, *Hem tibi Davum*, Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

41. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives ; as,

<i>Omnium optime loquitur,</i>	He speaks the best of all.
<i>Convenienter naturæ,</i>	Agreeably to nature.
<i>Proxime castris</i> or <i>castra,</i>	Next the camp.

## 2. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

42. The prepositions *ad, apud, ante, &c.* govern the accusative ; as,

<i>Ad patrem,</i>	To the father.
-------------------	----------------

43. The



43. The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative ; as,

*A patre,*

From the father.

Obs. 1. *A* and *e* are put before consonants ; *ab* and *ex* before vowels and consonants ; *abs* before *t* and *q*.

Obs. 2. *Tenus* is construed with the genitive plural, when joined with a word which wants the singular ; as, *Cumarum tenus*, As far as Cumæ ; or when we speak of things of which we have naturally but two ; as, *Crurum tenus*, Up to the legs. We likewise find *tenus* sometimes joined with the genitive singular ; as, *Corcyræ tenus*, Liv.

44. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified ; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, they govern the ablative ; as,

*Eo in scholam,*

I go into the school.

*Sedeo vel ambulo in schola,*

I sit or walk in the school.

Obs. 1. *Super* and *subter* also govern the accusative, when motion or rest in a place is signified ; as, *Sedens super arma*, Virg. *Subter cutem*, Plin. So likewise *in* ; as, *Occisus est in provinciam*, for *in Provincia*, Sall. *Esse in potestatem*, Cic. But such examples seldom occur.

Obs. 2. *In* taken for *inter*, and *super* for *de*, govern the ablative ; as, *In amicis*, Among friends ; *Super hac re*, About this matter. *Sub* taken for *circa* usually governs the accusative ; as, *Sub idem tempus*, About the same time.

Obs. 3. Prepositions in English are always joined to the objective case ; as, *to him*, *from him* &c. The prepositions *to* and *for* are often understood ; as, *Show me the book* ; *Get me some paper* ; that is, *to me*, *for me*.

Obs. 4. Prepositions in English are often disjoined from the words which they govern ; as, *Whom do you speak to* ? But this in many cases seems to be improper.

45. A preposition in composition often governs



verns the same case, as when it stands by itself ; as,

*Adeamus scholam,*  
*Exeamus scholâ,*

Let us go to the school.  
Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated ; as, *Adire ad scholam ; Exire e schola ; Adgredi aliquid, or ad aliquid.*

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with the prepositions *e* or *ex*, have either the accusative or ablative after them ; as, *Egredi urbem or urbe. Evadere insidias, or insidiis.*

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself ; as, *Alloquor patrem, or loquor ad patrem.*

Obs. 4. Prepositions are often understood ; as, *Devenire locos, scil. ad, Virg. Nunc id prodeo, scil. ob vel propter, Ter. Maria aspera juro, scil. per, Virg. Ut se loco movere non possent, scil. e vel de, Cæs. Vina promens dolio, scil. ex, Hor. Quid illo facias ? scil. de, Ter.* We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed ; as, *Circum concordiae, scil. ædem, Sall.* But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition ; thus, *Emittere servum, scil. manu, Plaut. Evomere virus, scil. ore, Cic. Educere copias, scil. castris, Cæs.*

### 3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

46. The interjections *O, heu,* and *proh,* are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative ; as,

*O vir bonus or bone !*  
*Heu me miserum !*

O good man !  
Ah wretched me !

47. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative ; as,

*Hæi mihi !*  
*Væ vobis !*

Ah me !  
Wo to you !

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *ohé* are joined only with the vocative ; as, *Heus Syre, Ter. Ohe libelle ! Martial. Proh or pro,*  
*ab,*



*ah, vah, hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh hominum fidem!* Ter. *Proh Sancte Jupiter!* Cic. *Hem astutias!* Ter.

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connection with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case therefore is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely: thus, *Heu me miserum!* stands for *Heu! quam me miserum sentio!* *Hei mihi!* for *Hei! malum est mihi!* *Proh dolor!* for *Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

### I. PRICE.

48. The Price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

*Emi librum duobus assibus*, I bought a book for two shillings.  
*Constitit talento*, It cost a talent.

Except. These genitives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, are excepted; as,

*Quanti constitit*,  
*Asses et pluris*,

How much cost it?  
A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *Pretio minore captivos redemit*, Liv.

Obs. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit*, scil. *pretio*. Cic.

Obs. 3. *Valet*, when referred to price, sometimes governs the accusative, but more frequently the ablative; as, *Valet decem talenta*, or oftener *decem talentis*.

Obs. 4. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Valet pro decem argenteis*, Liv.



## 2. MANNER and CAUSE.

49. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative ; as,

*Palleo metu,*

I am pale for fear.

*Fecit suo more,*

He did it after his own way.

*Scribo calamo,*

I write with a pen.

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed ; as, *De more matrum locuta est*, Virg. *Magno cum metu* ; *Hac de causa* : *Præ mærore, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument ; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio*, not *cum gladio* ; unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab* ; as, *Trajectus ab ense*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. When a thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of *concomitancy*, and has the preposition *cum* usually added ; as, *Obsedit curiam cum gladiis* : *Ingressus est cum gladio*, Cic.

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the *Adjunct*, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of ; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum*, Liv. *Floruit acumine ingenii*, Cic. *Æger pedibus*. When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added ; as, *Templum de marmore*, seldom *marmoris* ; *Poculum ex auro factum*, Cic.

## 3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by* or *through which*.

*At* or *In* a place is put in the genitive ; unless it be a noun of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

*To* a place is put in the accusative ; *From* or *by* a place, in the ablative.

But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particular questions.

1. The



1. *The Place* WHERE.

50. When the question is made by *Ubi*? Where? the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

*Vixit Romæ,*

He lived at Rome.

*Mortuus est Londini,*

He died at London.

But if the name of a town be of the third declension, or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

*Habitat Carthagine,*

He dwells at Carthage.

*Studuit Parisiis,*

He studied at Paris.

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, At or near Troy.

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed: thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebris*; but either, *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or *in Roma celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner, we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi*?

2. *The Place* WHITHER.

51. When the question is made by *Quo*? Whither? the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

*Venit Romam,*

He came to Rome.

*Profectus est Athenas,*

He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*, Horat.



Obs. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciatum*, The report was carried to Rome, Liv. *Messanam literas dedit*, Cic.

### 3. The Place Whence.

52. When the question is made by *Unde?* Whence? or *Qua?* By or through what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Discessit Corintho,</i>	He departed from Corinth.
<i>Laodicēā iter faciebat,</i>	He went through Laodicea.

Obs. When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*, Nep.

### *Domus* and *Rus*.

53. *Domus* and *Rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

<i>Manet domi,</i>	He stays at home.
<i>Domum revertitur,</i>	He returns home.
<i>Domo arcessitus sum,</i>	I am called from home.
<i>Vivit rure, or more frequently ruri,</i>	} He lives in the country.
<i>Rediit rure,</i>	
<i>Abiit rus,</i>	} He is returned from the country.

Obs. 1. *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus, *Domi et militiæ*, or *belli*, At home and abroad. *Jacet humi*, He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paterna*, not *domi paternæ*: So, *Ad domum paternam*: *Ex domo paternâ*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *alienus*; as, *Domi meæ vixit*, Cic.

Obs. 3. When *Domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo, or in domo Caesaris*.



54. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, a preposition is commonly added ; as,

When the question is made by  
*Ubi ? Natus in Italia, in Latio, in urbe, &c.*  
*Quo ? Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in, or, ad urbem, &c.*  
*Unde ? Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.*  
*Qua ? Transiit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.*

Obs. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns ; as, *In Roma* for *Romæ* ; *ad Romam, ex Roma, &c.* *Peto* always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition ; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition ; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*, Cæf. *Cretæ jussit considerare Apollo*, Virg. *Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. *Romæ, Numidiaque facinora ejus memorat*, Sall.

#### 4. MEASURE.

55. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative ; as,

<i>Murus est decem pedes altus,</i>	The wall is ten feet high.
<i>Urbs distat triginta millia, or</i>	The city is thirty miles distant.
<i>triginta milibus passuum,</i>	
<i>Iter, or itinere unius diei,</i>	One day's journey.

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension ; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus*, and *altus* : *Patet, porrigitur, eminet, &c.* The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance ; as, *Eo, curro, absum, disto, &c.* The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number ; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denum pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where



any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative ; or the accusative with the preposition *ad* ; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe confedit*, or, *ad sex millia passuum*, Cæf.

### 5. TIME.

56. When the question is made by *Quando*? When ? time is put in the ablative ; as,

*Venit hora tertia,*

He came at three o'clock.

When the question is made by *Quamdiu*? How long ? time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative ; as,

*Mansit paucos dies,*

He staid a few days.

*Sex mensibus absuit,*

He was away six months.

Obs. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative ; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition ; as, *In præsentia*, or *in præsentia*, scil. *tempore* ; *Per decem annos* ; *Surgunt de nocte* ; *Ad horam destinatam* ; *Intra annum* ; *per idem tempus*. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *istuc*, *ætatis*, *temporis*, *horæ*, &c. for *hac ætate*, &c.

Obs. 3. The adverb *abhinc* which is only used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition, as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*, It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante* ; as, *Paucos post annos* : but here, *ea* or *id* may be understood.

## COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The



The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects, and one attribute, or several attributes, and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes: That is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgement or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must therefore be in every sentence or period as many propositions as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

*Happy is the Man, who loveth religion, and practiseth virtue.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

57. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Vir qui,</i>	The man who.	<i>Viri qui.</i>
<i>Fæmina quæ,</i>	The woman who.	<i>Fæminæ quæ.</i>
<i>Negotium quod,</i>	The thing which.	<i>Negotia quæ.</i>
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	I who write.	<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	Thou who writest.	<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	The man who writes.	<i>Viri qui scribunt.</i>
<i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>	The woman who writes.	<i>Mulieres quæ scribunt.</i>
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	The animal which runs.	<i>Animalia quæ currunt.</i>
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	The man whom I saw.	<i>Viri quos vidi,</i>
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	The woman whom I saw.	<i>Mulieres quas vidi.</i>
<i>Animal quod vidi,</i>	The animal which I saw.	<i>Animalia quæ vidi.</i>
<i>Vir cui paret,</i>	The man whom he obeys,	<i>Viri quibus paret.</i>
<i>Vir cui est similis,</i>	The man to whom he is like.	<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.	<i>Viri a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.	<i>Mulieres ad quas.</i>
<i>Vir cujus opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.	<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>
<i>Vir quem misëror,</i>	} The man whom I pity.	
<i>cujus misereor vel miseresco,</i>		
<i>cujus me miseret,</i>		
<i>cujus vel cuja interest, &amp;c.</i>		whose interest it is, &c.



Obs. 1. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb. But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, use to govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

Obs. 2. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed betwixt two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as, *vir qui (vir) legit; vir, quem (virum) amo*: Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque norit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat*, Cic. *Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit*, Ter. sc. *Eunuchus*. Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent*, Cæf. Sometimes, tho' more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos hoc genus minime juvat*, for *sunt homines, quos*, &c. Hor.

Obs. 3. When the relative is placed betwixt two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as, *Vultus quem dixere chaos*, Ovid. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur*, Sall. *Animas, quem vocamus hominem*, Cic. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius se afflixit, quod mihi est summo dolori*, scil. *Pompeiam se affligere*, Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied; as, *Scelus qui*, for *scelestus*, Ter. *Abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant*, scil. *negotia*, Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitiae puto, facit ut te moneam*, scil. *negotium*, Ter.

Obs. 4. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio*, scarcely *facit*. In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man, who make, or maketh*. But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence: thus it is proper to say, "I am the man, who takes



takes care of your interest," but if I add, "at the expence of my own," it would be improper. It ought either to be "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you, who gave, who did love," &c. But it is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love:" it should be, "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 5. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as, *Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum*, Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur*; i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem*, &c. Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, quæ multa sunt, scil. tempora*, Cic.

Obs. 6. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit: Tyrii tenuere coloni*, scil. *quam* or *eam*, Virg. Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invadunt*; for *quique in priore pugna non adfuerant*, Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *The letter I wrote*, for *the letter which I wrote*; *The man I love*, to wit, *whom*. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 7. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consueſti*, for *quæ consueſti agere*, or *quorum aliquid agere consueſti*, Cic. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 8. The adjective pronouns *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Liber ejus*, His or her book; *Vita eorum*, Their life, when applied to men; *Vita earum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns



pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 9. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis*, *quantus*, *quotus*, &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum*, Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives, either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitudo, quantam urbs capere potest*: and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas*, Cic.

Obs. 10. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our Father, which art in heaven*: and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which*; as, *This is what he wanted*: that is, *the thing which he wanted*.

Obs. 11. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so; not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse?* Who do they say that I am? not whom. *Quem dicunt adventare?* Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 12. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read: *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you actually have read.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

58. The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple like cases and modes; as,



*Honora patrem et matrem,* Honour father and mother.  
*Nec legit nec scribit,* He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions ; as likewise *quam, nisi, præterquam, an* ; and also adverbs of likeness, as *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut, &c.* as, *Nullum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam, hujus diei memoriam, Cic. Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur, Id.*

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together ; as, *Interest mea et reipublicæ ; Constitit asse et pluris ; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epiro ; Decius cum devoveret, et in mediam aciem irruebat, Cic.*

Obs. 3. When *et, aut, vel, sive, or nec,* are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise* ; *aut* or *vel*, by *either* ; the first *sive*, by *whether* ; and the first *nec*, by *neither* ; as, *Et legit, et scribit ;* so *tum legit, tum scribit ;* or *cum legit, tum scribit,* He both reads and writes ; *Sive legit, sive scribit,* Whether he reads or writes.

59. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as *et, ac, atque, &c.*) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural ; as,

*Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti,* Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third ; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus,* If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, Cic. In English the person speaking usually puts himself last : thus, *You and I read ; Cicero and I are well* : but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first : thus, *Ego et tu legimus.*

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective



adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui*: but this is only applicable to beings which may have life.

Obs. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus gloria, in oculis sita sunt*, Sall. The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as, *Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit*, Cic. *Sociis et rege recepto*, Virg. *Et ego in culpa sum, et tu*, Both I am in the fault, and you; or *Et ego et tu es in culpa*, Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt*; or *nihil hic deest nisi carmina*. *Omnia, quibus turbari solita erat civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum*, Liv. 4. 52. This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium in senibus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men.

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as, *Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt*, Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *Dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant*, Ter.

60. The conjunctions *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam*, and *dummodo* are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

<i>Lego ut discam,</i>	I read that I may learn.
<i>Utinam sapires,</i>	I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. Several of these, and many other conjunctions, as *si, cum, quod, dum, etsi, nisi, quanquam, quamvis, &c.* are sometimes joined with the indicative, and sometimes with



with the subjunctive mode, according to the meaning which is expressed.

Obs. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, these conjunctions are construed with the subjunctive mode; but when a more absolute or determinate sense is expressed, they are construed with the indicative; as, *Si habeas*, If you *happen* to have; *Si habes*, If you *actually* have. *Etsi sint divites*, Although they be rich; *Etsi sunt divites*, Although they are rich. This distinction however often does not hold.

Obs. 3. All interrogatives, when taken indefinitely, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit*, I do not know who it is. *Dubito an venturus sit*. Sometimes however these are joined with the indicative mode; as, *Vide quid facit*, Ter.

Obs. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former: thus, when *etsi*, *tametsi*, or *quamvis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet, or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam*, — *quam*; *Adeo* or *ita*, — *ut*; in English, *As*, — *as* or *so*; as, *Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. *So prius* or *ante*, — *quam*. In some of these however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *rogo*, *precor*, *censeo*, *suadeo*, *licet*, *oportet*, *neccesse est*, and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine*, *fac* or *facito*; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem*; *Nolo mentiare*, Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave*; as, *Cave facias*, Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat*, Liv. 4. 47. scil. *post*.

Obs. 6. *Ut* and *quod* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done; as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn; *Gauden quod legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adeo*, *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *tot*, &c.

Obs. 7. After the verbs *timeo*, *vereor*, and the like, *ut*



is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as, *Timeo ne faciat*, I fear he will do it; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas*, Ter. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

61. The comparative degree governs the ablative; as,

<i>Dulcior melle,</i>	Sweeter than honey.
<i>Præstantior auro,</i>	Better than gold.

Obs. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis* likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce*, Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior præ cæteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as *Immanior ante omnes*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quam*, and then, instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as, *Dulcior quam mel*, scil. *est*. *Amo te magis quam illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quam amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quam ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quam ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quam illo*, scil. *ab*.

Obs. 3. The conjunction *quam* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus*. *Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti*, Cæf. scil. *quam*. *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi*, Ter

Obs. 4. In English, the relative *who* after *than* is always put in the accusative case; as, He is a man, *than whom* there is none better: but here if we substitute a pronoun in place of the relative, the pronoun must be put in the nominative; as, There is none better than *he*, not, than *him*. In like manner, it is improper to say, He is better than *me*, than *us*, than *her*, than *them*, &c. It should be, He is better than *I*, than *we*, than *she*, than *they*, &c. the auxiliary verb being understood to each of them.

Obs. 5. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quam ego*,  
He



He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit.* *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc,* Ter.

Obs. 6. The excess of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; as, *Est decem digitis altior quam frater,* He is ten inches taller than his brother, *or by ten inches.* To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio, &c.*; thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt,* The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior,* The better, the happier. We frequently find *multo* also joined with superlatives: *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus,* Sall. *Multo-que id maximum fuit,* Liv.

## The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

62. A substantive and a participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

<i>Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ,</i>	{	The sun rising, <i>or</i> while the sun riseth, darkness flies away.
<i>Opere peracto, ludemus,</i>		Our work being finished, <i>or</i> when our work is finished, we will play.

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence. For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place: the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt,* The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis,* may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered;* 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered;* 3. *By conquering the enemy;* 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.*



Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc confedit*, never *his locutis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt*; or *Romani, libertate adepti, floruerunt*. But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore find them rarely used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce*, scil. *existente*. *His consulibus*, scil. *existentibus*. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent*, Liv. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cætera lætus*, Hor. In both these *negotio* must be understood, or the clause of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Absente nobis*, for *absente me*, Ter. Here more regard is had to the sense than to the construction. *Absente* is here taken by some as a preposition, by others as an indeclinable word. But examples of this construction very rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called absolute is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a*, *ab*, *cum*, *sub*, or *in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis juvantibus*, Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciosa libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas naturæ accusatur*, Sall. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways: thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *Cum*, *dum*, or *quando Superbus regnabat*. *Opere peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum*, or *Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently on the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.



## FIGURES of SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbäton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

### I. ELLIPSIS.

*Ellipsis* is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense; as, *Aiunt*, scil. homines: *Dic mihi, Damæta, cujum pecus*; that is, *Dic (tu) mihi, Damæta, (eum hominem) cujum pecus (est hoc pecus)*.

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of *Ennaläge*, *Antiptōsis*, *Hellenism*, &c. thus, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi*, is *Duo millia (hominum) Samnitium (fuerunt homines) cæsi*, Liv. So *Monstrum quæ*, scil. mulier, Horat. *Omnia Mercurio similis*, scil. secundum, Virg. *Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati*; i. e. *Missi legati (et) uterque (legatus missus) de magnis rebus*, Horat. *Servitia repudiabat, cujus*, scil. servitii, Sall. Cat. 51. *Homo id ætatis*, scil. circa, Cic. *Quid me fiet*, scil. de or in, Ter.

When a writer frequently uses the *Ellipsis* his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

### 2. PLEONASM.

*Pleonasm* is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis*, I see with my eyes; *Sic ore locuta est; nusquam gentium; vivere vitam; servire servitutem; Quid mihi Celsus agit? Fac me ut sciam*, &c.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called *Polysyndeton*; as, *Una Eurisque Notisque ruunt*, Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, it is called *Hendiadys*; as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, for *aureis pateris*, Virg.



When several words are used to express one thing, it is called *Periphrasis*; as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*, Virg. *Res voluptatum*, for *voluptates*, Plaut.

### 3. HYPERBATON.

*Hyperbaton* is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are, *Anastrophe*, *Hysteron protëron*, *Hypallage*, *Synchësis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthësis*.

1. *Anastrophe* is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra*; *His accensa super*; *Spemque metumque inter dubii*; for *contra Italiam*, *super his*, *inter spem*, &c. Virg. *Terram sol facit are*, for *arefacit*, Lucret.

2. *Hysteron protëron* is when that is put in the former part of the sentence, which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet*, Ter.

3. *Hypallage* is the exchanging of cases; as, *Dare classibus austros*, for *dare classes austris*, Virg.

4. *Synchësis* is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras*; for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*, Virg.

5. *Tmesis* is the division of a compound word, and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjecta trioni gens*, for *Septentrioni*, Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere*, for *quæcunque*, Ter.

6. *Parenthësis* is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction; as, *Tityre, dum redeo, (brevis est via) pasce capellas*, Virg.

### ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of



one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus, in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd*, Milton. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorical*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another according to the natural order of syntax.

*Artificial* or *Oratorical* order is when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order therefore to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However to a beginner the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words, which serve to introduce the sentence, or shew its dependence on what went before; *next*, the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together



ther with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence : supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up ; as,

*Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te "quidem mihi carissimum ; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3.*

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear unto me ; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences ; 1. *Igitur, mi (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale,* 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipso) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mihi ;* 3. *sed (tu persuade tibi ipso te) fore (filium) cariorem (mihi in) multo (negotio),* 4. *si (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis,* 5. *et (si tu lætabere talibus) præceptis.*

1. Fare (you) well then, my (son) Cicero, 2. and assure (you) yourself that you are indeed (a son) very dear to me ; 3. but (assure you yourself that you) shall be (a son) much dearer (to me), 4. if you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and (if you shall take delight in such) instructions.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made further progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects ; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought ; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

When



When a word is turned from its original signification, and taken in a borrowed sense, it is called a *TROPE*; as when the cause is put for the effect, or a part for the whole, or the materials for the things made of them, or the sign for the thing signified, &c. Thus, *Boum labores*, for *corn*, Virg. *Quis desiderio sit pudor tam chari capitis*, for *hominis*, Horat. *Ferro accingor*, for *gladio*, Virg. *Cedant arma togæ*, i. e. as Cicero himself explains it, *Bellum concedat paci*. When we divide tropes into different classes, these examples are comprehended under the *ME-TONOMY*.

When a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance, it is called a *METAPHOR*; thus, we say, “A *hard* heart;” “A *soft* temper;” “He *bridles* his anger,” &c.

We likewise call that a *Metaphor*, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance betwixt them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say, *the morning of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an *ALLEGORY*. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so frequently occurs in the sacred scriptures.

When the resemblance betwixt two objects is expressed in the form of a comparison, it is called a *SIMILE*, as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion*.

When two things are contrasted together, or set in opposition to one another, it is called *ANTITHESIS*; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious. Sylla was courteous to his friends, but implacable to his enemies*.

When we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities, it is called *PROSOPOPEIA* or *PERSONIFICATION*. When we turn from persons and objects present, and address those which are dead or absent, it is called *APOSTROPHE*. We sometimes find this figure joined with the former; as,

*Trojaque*



*Trojaque nunc stares, Priamique arx alta maneres, Virg.*

When an object is magnified or diminished beyond the truth, it is called **HYPERBOLE**; as, when Virgil speaking of *Polyphēmus*, says,

*Ipse arduus, altaque pulsat sidera.*

Of the above figures, those which consist merely in the turn of the thought, such as the *allegory*, *simile*, &c. are easily translated, being the same in all languages. But this is not the case with figures of words, or turns of expression, properly termed **TROPES**. There are a great many of them, as well as of proverbial expressions, peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: And if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of old *Falernian wine*: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, *Horat.* These, and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

But it is not in figurative expressions alone, that we are obliged, in our translation, to depart from the original. This is likewise often the case in simple language, where the words are taken in their proper sense. There are many simple phrases both in English and Latin, which cannot be literally translated from the one language into the other. Thus to render in Latin, *Under the reign of Tiberius*, we must either say, *Tiberio regnante*, or *dum Tiberius regnabat*; and so in many other instances.

From this diversity of idiom in the two languages, learners are apt frequently to fall into grammatical improprieties, or what are called *Latinisms* and *Anglicisms*, in translating from either language into the other; thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribere*, for *Ego sum scripturus*; It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum*: *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, *for than I*; *Quem dicunt me esse*? Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

When the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody are transgressed, it is called a *Barbarism*; as, *charus*,  
for



for *carus* ; *stavi* for *steti* ; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*. We likewise call that a *Barbarism*, when a foreign or strange word is made use of ; as, when we say *crostus* for *agellus* ; *rigorosus*, for *severus* or *rigidus* ; *alterare*, for *mutare*, &c.

When the rules of syntax are transgressed, it is called a *Solecism* ; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum* ; *We was walking*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

Besides these grammatical errors, there are several other improprieties of stile, which the learner should be taught to know and to avoid. The most common of these are *Tautology* and *Bombast*. *Tautology* is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words. *Bombast* is when high-sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling subject.

## The QUANTITY of SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of syllables, and the measures of verse, is called *Prosody*.

Syllables, with respect to their quantity, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short ; as, *tēndērē*.

Some syllables are *common*.

A common syllable is that which, in verse, is sometimes long, and sometimes short ; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular



particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*, that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus, *le* in *lĕgo* and *lĕgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlĕgo*, *perlĕgi*.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

### GENERAL RULES.

1\*. A vowel before another vowel is short; as,

*Mĕus*, *alius*: so *nĭhil*; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crĕate*, *bĕhave*.

Except. i†. *I* is long in *fĭo*, *fĭebam*, &c. unless when followed by *r*; as, *fĭĕri*, *fĭerem*.

Except. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long; as, *speciĕi*. So is the first syllable in *āer*, *dĭus*, *ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompĕi*, *Cāi*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompei* in two syllables.

Except. 3. The first syllable in *obe* and *Diana* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius*, *unius*, &c. to be read long in prose. *Alius* in the genit. is always long; *alterius* short.

In *Greek words* ‡, a vowel before another is sometimes short; as, *Danāe*, *idĕa*, *Simōis*, &c.: sometimes long; as,

\* Vocalem breviant aliā subeunte Latini.

† Ni capit *r*, *fĭo*, produc: & nomina quintæ  
*E* servant longum, si præsit *i*, ceu *speciei*.  
 Anceps *ius* erit patrio: sed protrahe *alius*,  
*Alterius* brevia tantum: commune sit *obe*.  
*Pompei*, *Cai*, produc, conformia jungens.  
*Dianam* varia: longa *aēr*, *dĭus*, & *ēheu*,  
 Et patrius primæ cū sese solvit in *ai*.

‡ Hic Græci variant, nec certâ lege tenentur.

*Lycāon*,



*Lycāon, Cytherēa, Medēa, Dariūs, Amphion, Ixion, Elegia, Antiochia, Alexandria, &c.* But *chorea, platea, canopeum*, and *Malea*, a proper name, are common.

In English it is also often lengthened; as in *science, idēa*.

2\*. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long (*by position, as it is called*); as,

*arma, fallo, axis, gaza, major*; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bijugus, quadrijugus, &c.*

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

*Ferte citi flammās, date vela, scandite muros, Virg.*

But this rarely occurs.

*A vowel before a mute † and a liquid is common;*

as the first syllable in *agris*, and the middle in *pharetra, podagra*; but in prose we usually pronounce it short.

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris* is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater*. In like manner the penult in *salubris, ambulācrum*, is always long; because they are derived from *salus, salutis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte, abluo, &c.* is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

*L* and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words: *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

\* Si postponatur vocali consona bina,  
Aut duplex, longa est positu: sin utraque vocem  
Incipiat, raro præeunti est ultima longa.

† Si mutæ liquida est subjuncta in syllaba eadem,  
Quæ brevis antevenit vocalis, redditur anceps.  
Hanc tamen in prosa semper breviare memento.  
Sunt *l, r*, liquida, quæ raro jungimus *m, n*.



3.\* A contracted syllable is long; as,

*cōgo*, for *coāgo*; *aliūs*, for *aliius*; *tibīcen*, for *tibiicen*; *īt*, for *iit*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bīgæ*, for *bijūgæ*, &c.

4.† A diphthong is always long; as,

*Aurum*, *Cæsar*, *Eubæa*, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is short; as, *præire*.

We often find two vowels in the same syllable short; as, *linguimus*, *sanguinis*, &c.; but these commonly are not reckoned diphthongs, perhaps improperly.

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

#### SPECIAL RULES.

### I. Concerning the FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

*Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.*

5.‡ Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as,

*Vēni*, *vīdi*, *vīci*.

Except these six, *bībi*, *scīdi* from *scindo*, *fīdi* from *fin-do*, *tūli*, *dēdi*, *stēli*.

6.|| Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as,

*Vīsum*, *cāsum*, *mōtum*.

Except *sātum*, from *sēro*; *cītum*, from *cieo*; *lītum*, from *līno*; *sītum*, from *sīno*; *stātum*, from *sisto*; *ītum*, from

\* Vocalem efficiet semper contractio longam.

† Diphthongum produc in Græcis atque Latinis; In Græcis semper; at PRÆ composita sequente Vocali brevia; veluti *præit* atque *præustus*.

‡ Præterita assumunt primam dissyllaba longam. Tolle *bibit*, *scidit*, & *fidit*, ac *tulit*, ortaque *dō*, *sto*.

|| Cuncta Supina tenent primam dissyllaba longam: Præter nata *fero*, *cieo*, *lino*, cum *sino*, *sisto*, Quæ breviant; *eo*, *doque*, *ruo*, *queo* *junge*, *reor*que.



*eo*; *dātum*, from *do*; *rūtum*, from the compounds of *ruo*; *quītum*, from *queo*; *rātus*, from *reor*.

*Preterites doubled.*

7.\* Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as,

*Cēcīdi*, *tētīgi*, *pēpūli*, *pēpēri*, *dīdīci*, *tūtūdi*: except *cēcīdi*, from *cædo*; *pēpēdi*, from *pēdo*; and when two consonants intervene; as, *fēselli*, *tētendi*, &c.

## INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex*, *rēgis*. Here *re* is called the *increase* or *cement*, and goes through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a cement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter*, *itīnērīs*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener*, *genēri*, *genērōrum*.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus*, *fructūi*; *res*, *rēi*; which fall under Rule 1.

### *Second Declension.*

8.† Nouns of the second declension which increase, shorten the penultima; as,

*Gener*, *genēri*; *vir*, *vīri*; *satur*, *satūri*: except *Iber*, *Ibēri*, and its compound *Celtiber*, *Celtibēri*.

### *Third Declension.*

9. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e*, *i*, and *u* short; as,

\* Præteritum geminans primam, breviabit utramque,  
Ut *pario*, *peperi*; vetet id nisi consona bina.  
At quod *cædo* creat tardat, ceu *pēdo*, secundam.

† Quæ sequitur primam tantum producit *Iberi*.



*Pietātis, honōris; muliēris, lapīdis, murmuris.*

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

### A.

A noun in A\* shortens *atis* in the genitive; as, *dogma, -ātis; poema, -ātis.*

### O.

O† shortens *inis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis*; as, *Cardo, -īnis; Virgo, -inis; Anio, -ēnis; Cicero, -ōnis.* Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macedo, -ōnis; Saxo, -ōnis*: Some are long; as, *Suessiōnes, Vettōnes.* *Brittonēs* is common.

### I. C. D.

I‡ shortens *itis*; as, *Hydromēli, -ītis.* Ec lengthens *-ecis*; as, *Halec, -ēcis.*

A noun in D || shortens the clement; as, *David, -īdis.*

### L.

Masculines in AL\*\* shorten *ālis*; as, *Sal, -sālis; Hannibal, -ālis*: but neuters lengthen it; as, *animal, -ālis.*

*Sōlis* from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael, -ēlis.* Other nouns in *l* shorten the clement; as, *Vigil, -īlis; consul, -ūlis.*

### N.

Nouns in ON†† vary the clement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon, -ōnis; Chiron, -ōnis.* Some shorten it; as, *Memnon, -ōnis; Actæon, -ōnis.*

EN shortens *inis*; as, *flumen, -īnis; tilīcen, -īnis.* Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *anis*; as, *Titan, -ānis*: EN *enis*; as, *Siren, -ēnis*: IN *īnis*; as, *dolphin, -īnis*: YN *ynis*; as, *Phorcyn, -ȳnis.*

\* Semper A curtat *atis* ternæ: sit *dogmatis* index.

† O breviabit *inis*: sed porriget *enis* & *onis*.

Mensuram variant at in his gentilia quædam.

‡ I breve mittit *itis*. Sed ab ec producitur *ecis*.

|| In D clementum breve nomina pauca tulerunt.

\*\* AL mas curtat *alis*: sed neutrum protrahit *alis*.  
*Elis* cum *Solis* produc; reliquis breviatis.

†† ON nimis incertum est: EN *inis* rape: cætera produc.



## R.

1\*. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar*, -āris. Except the following, *bacchar*, -āris; *jubar*, -āris; *nectar*, -āris: Also the adjective *par*, *pāris*, and its compounds, *impar*, -āris; *dispar*, -āris, &c.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive, *Nar*, *Nāris*, the name of a river; *fur*, *fūris*; *ver*, *vēris*: Also *Recimer*, -ēris; *Byzer*, -ēris; *Ser*, *Sēris*; *Iber*, -ēris, proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater*, -ēris; *character*, -ēris. Except *aether*, -ēris.

4. OR lengthens *oris*; as, *amor*, -ōris. Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor*, -ōris; *æquor*, -ōris: Greek nouns in *tor*; as, *Hætor*, -ōris; *Rhetor*, -ōris: Also *arbor*, -ōris; and *memor*, -ōris.

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *aris*, masc.; as, *Cæsar*, -āris; *Hamilcar*, -āris; *lar*, *lāris*.

ER *eris* of any gender; as, *aer*, *aëris*; *mulier*, -ēris; *cadāver*, -ēris; *iter*, antiently *itīner*, *itinēris*; *verbēris*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *uris*; as, *vultur*, -ūris; *murmur*, -ūris. YR *yris*; as, *Martyr*, -yris.

## A S.

1. Nouns in AS † which have *atis* lengthen the clement; as, *pietas*, -ātis; *Mæcēnas*, -ātis. Except *anas*, -ātis.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the clement; as, Greek nouns in *adis*, *atis*, and *ānis*; thus, *Pallas*, -ādis; *artocreas*, -eātis; *Melas*, -ānis, the name of a river. So *vas*, *vādis*; *mas*, *māris*: But *vas*, *vāsis* is long.

## E S.

ES ‡ shortens the clement; as, *miles*, -itis; *Ceres*, -ēris; *pes*, *pēdis*.

\* *Aris* ab AR neutro produc: sed demito *bacchar*,  
*Par* cum compositis, *jubar* his cum *nectare* jungens,  
 Protrahe, *Nar*, *Naris*, *furis*, *veris*, *Recimeris*.  
*Byzer*, *Ser*, & *Iber*, in *ter* Græcum, *athere* dempto.  
*Oris* ab OR longum est: cum neutris corripe Græca.

\* *Arboris* & *memoris* brevies, indictaque cuncta.

† *Atis* ab AS tardant, *anatis* nisi, quæque Latina.  
 Cætera, sed *voss* dempto, correpta dabuntur.

‡ ES patrium breviat: demas *locuplesque*, *quiesque*,  
 Et *marfues*, *beres*, *merces*, & Græca per *etis*.



Except *locuples*, -ētis ; *quies*, -ētis ; *mansues*, -ētis ; *hæres*, -ēdis ; *merces*, -ēdis.

## I S.

Nouns in IS\* shorten the clement ; as, *lapis*, -īdis ; *Sanguis*, -īnis ; *Phyllis*, -īdis.

Except *Glis*, *gliris* ; and Latin nouns which have *itis* ; as, *lis*, *litis* ; *dis*, *ditis* ; *Quiris*, -ītis ; *Samnis*, -ītis : But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charitis*.

The following also lengthen the clement : *Crenis*, -īdis ; *Pfophis*, -īdis ; *Nesis*, -īdis, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in* ; as, *Salāmis*, or -in, *Salāmīnis*.

## O S.

Nouns in OS† lengthen the clement ; as, *nepos*, -ōtis ; *flos*, *floris*.

Except *Bos*, *bōvis* ; *compos*, -ōtis ; *impos*, -ōtis.

## U S.

US‡ shortens the clement ; as, *tempus*, -ōris ; *tripus*, -ōdis.

Except nouns which have *ūdis*, *ūris*, and *ūtis* ; as, *inrus*, -ūdis ; *jus*, *jūris* ; *salus*, -ūtis. But *Ligus* has *Liguris* ; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecūdis* ; and *intercus*, -ūtis.

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris* ; as, *melius*, -ōris.

## Y S.

YS|| shortens *ydis* or *ydos* ; as, *chlamys*, -ydis, or -ydos : and lengthens *ynis* ; as, *Trachys*, -ynis.

## B S. P S. M S.

Nouns in S\*\*, with a consonant going before, shorten

\* Corripit IS crescens patrium : sed porrige *gliris*,  
Et quod Romuleum genitivum format in *itis*.  
Et *Pfophis*, *Crenis*, *Nesis*, Græcumque quod in dat.

† OS patrii clementa dedit producta : sed aufer  
Quæ tria correptis gaudent, *bos*, *compos*, & *impos*.

‡ US clementa rapit : sed in *uris*, & *utis*, & *udis*,  
Quod præit u longum est : *Ligus* hinc at tolle, *pecusque*,  
*Intercusque*. Gradus medius producit US *oris*.

|| YS celerabit *ydos* : sed tardè proferet *ynis*.

\*\* Consona cum præit S, patrii penultima curta est.  
Hinc *Cyclops*, *seps*, *gryps*, *Cercops*, *plebs* aufer, & *hydrops*.



the penult of the genitive ; as, *cælebs*, -*ĭbis* ; *inops*, -*ŏpis* ; *hiems*, -*ĕmis*.

Except *Cyclops*, -*ŏpis* ; *seps*, *sēpis* ; *gryps*, *grȳphis* ; *Cercops*, -*ŏpis* ; *plebs*, *plēbis* ; *hydrops*, -*ŏpis*.

## T.

T \* shortens the clement ; as, *caput*, -*ĭtis*.

## X.

1. Nouns in X †, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the clement ; *conjux*, -*ŭgis* ; *remex*, -*ĭgis* ; *Allobrox*, -*ŏgis* ; *Phryx*, *Phrȳgis*. But *lex*, *lēgis* ; and *rex*, *rēgis*, are long ; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. EX shortens *icis* ; as, *vertex*, -*ĭcis* : except *vibex*, -*īcis*.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the clement ; as, *pax*, *pācis* ; *radix*, -*īcis* ; *vox*, *vōcis* ; *lux*, *lūcis* ; *Pollux*, -*ūcis*, &c.

Except *fācis*, *nēcis*, *vĭcis*, *prēcis*, *calĭcis*, *pĭcis*, *fornĭcis*, *nĭvis*, *Cappadōcis*, *præcōcis*, *dūcis*, *nūcis*, *crūcis*, *trūcis*, *onŷchis*, *Erȳcis*, and many others, whose quantity can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the clement ; as, *Syphax*, -*ācis*, or -*ăcis* ; *Sandŷx*, -*ĭcis*, or -*īcis*.

*Increase of the Plural Number.*

10. ‡ Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long ; but shorten *I*, and *U* ; as,

*musārum*, *rērum*, *dominōrum* ; *rēgĭbus*, *portābus* : except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bōvĭbus*.

## INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the

\* T breve clementum patrii per *itis* sibi poscit.

† Præ *gis* vocalem rapit X. Producito *lex*, *rex*.  
EX *icis* abbreviat, *vibex* nisi. Cætera produc.

‡ Pluralis casus, si crescit, protrahit A, E,  
Et simul O. *Bubus* dempto, sed corripit I, U.



indicative active ; as, *amas, amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the *increase* or *cement* ; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables ; as, *amas, amābāmini* ; in which case it is said to have a *first, second, or third increase*.

11. In the increase of verbs, *a, e, and o* are long ; *i* and *u*, short ; as,

*Amāre, docēre, amātōte ; legimus, sumus, volumus.*

\* Except *do*, and its compounds of the first conjugation, which have the first increase short ; as, *dāre, dāmus, dābāmus, circundāre, venundābo, &c.*

The poets sometimes shorten *dēdērunt* and *stētērunt* ; and lengthen *rīmus* and *rītis*, in the future of the subjunctive ; as — *transierītis aquas*, Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb. If rules be thought necessary, they are inserted below.

The first or middle syllables of words, which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority* ; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

In the first and middle syllables of words, however, the most frequent mistakes in quantity are committed. They therefore merit particular attention.

\* A verbum crescens auctu producit in omni.  
Excipe crementum *dare* primum quod breve poscit.

E quoque producant verba incrementia : verum  
Prima E corripit ante *r* duo tempora ternæ.  
*Rere* sit & *reris* longum, *beris* at *bere* curtum.  
Semper E corripitur præ *ram, rim, roque* locatum.  
Curtat & interdum *steterunt, dederuntque* Poëta.

Corripit I crescens verbum : sed deme *velimus,*  
*Nolimus, simus,* quæque his fata cætera ; jungens  
*Ivi* præteritum, prima incrementaque quartæ.  
Præterito curtabis *imus* tamen undique : vates.  
Exacto variant *rimus ritisque* futuro.

O produc verbis crescentibus U breve profer.



REMARKS on the Quantity of some other *First* and *Middle Syllables* of Words.

1. Patronymics in *ides* or *ades* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamides*, *Atlantiades*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelides*, *Tydides*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *ais*, *eis*, *itis*, *ois*, *otis*, *ine*, and *one*, commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achais*, *Ptolemais*, *Chryseis*, *Æneis*, *Memphitis*, *Latōis*, *Icariōtis*, *Nerine*, *Arisiōne*. Except *Thebais* and *Phocais*; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *acus*, *icus*, *idus*, and *imus*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiācus*, *academīcus*, *lepidus*, *legitimus*; also superlatives; as, *fortissimus*, &c. Except *opācus*, *amīcus*, *apricus*, *pudicus*, *mendicus*, *posticus*, *fīdus*, *infīdus*, (but *perfīdus*, of *per* and *fīdes*, is short) *bīmus*, *quadrīmus*, *patrīmus*, *matrīmus*, *opīmus*; and two superlatives, *īmus*, *prīmus*.

4. Adjectives in *alis*, *anus*, *arus*, *ivus*, *orus*, *ofus*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *æstivus*, *decōrus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus*, *opipārus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ilis* shorten the penult; as, *agilis*, *facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anīlis*, *civīlis*, *herīlis*, &c. To these add, *exīlis*, *subtīlis*; and names of months, *Aprīlis*, *Quinctīlis*, *Sexīlis*: Except *humīlis*, *parīlis*; and also *simīlis*. But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versatīlis*, *volatīlis*, *umbratīlis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *inus* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c.; also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracīnus*, *crocīnus*, *cedrīnus*, *fagīnus*, *oleagīnus*; *adamantīnus*, *cristallīnus*, *crastīnus*, *pristīnus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *inus* are long; as, *agnīnus*, *bīnus*, *Latīnus*, *marīnus*, *supīnus*, *vespertīnus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *olus*, *ola*, *olum*; and *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, always shorten the penult; as, *urceōlus*, *filiōla*, *musæolum*; *lectūlus*, *ratiuncūla*, *corcūlum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidātīm*, *virītīm*, *tribūtīm*. Except *affātīm*, *perpētīm*, and *stātīm*.

9. Desideratives in *urio* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *esūrio*, *esūris*, *esūrit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio*, *ligūris*; *scatūrio*, *scatūris*, &c.



## 2. FINAL SYLLABLES.

*A.*

12\*. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short ; as,

*Musă, templă, Tydeă, lămpădă* : except the ablative of the first declension ; as, *Musă, Æneă* ; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as* ; as, *O Æneă, O Pallă*.

*A* in the end of a word not declined by cases is long ; as,

*Amă, frustră, prăetereă, ergă, intră* : except *ită, quiă, ejă, postă, pută*, (adv), and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contră, ultră* ; and the compounds of *ginta* ; as, *trigintă, &c.*

*E.*

13†. *E* final is short ; as,

*Natě, sedilě, patrě, currě, nempě, antě*.

Except. 1. Monosyllables are long ; as, *mě, tě, sě* : except these enclitic conjunctions *quě, vě, ně* ; and these syllabical adjections, *ptě, cě, tě* ; as, *suaptě, hujuscě, iutě*.

Except. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long ; as, *Calliöpě, Anchisě, fidě*. So, *rě-*, and *diě*, with their compounds, *quarě, hodiě, pridie, postridiě, quotidiě* : Also Greek nouns which want the singular ; *Cetě, melě*,

\* Casibus A flexum brevia. Sed protrahe sextum,  
Et quintum, Græco quando hic de nomine in As fit.  
Casibus haud flexum produc. Ita, cum quia, & eja,  
Et putà non verbum subduxeris, ballesquela.  
Curta quoque interdum, contra, ultra, & ginta creata.

† E brevia. Primæ produc, & nomina quintæ  
Cum natis. Addes pluralia cuncta : secundæ  
Induperativum socians. Monosyllaba, demptis  
Encliticis ac syllabicis, quoque longa repones.  
Adde à mobilibus flexûs quæcunque secundi  
Manârunt, summique gradûs adverbia quævis.  
Sed benè cum malè corripies, infernè, supernè.  
Productis ferme atque ferè jungantur, & oke.



*Tempē* ; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation ; as, *Docē, manē* ; but *cave, vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

Except. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long ; as, *placidē, pulchrē, valdē* contracted for *validē* : To these add *firmē, ferē*, and *obē* ; also all adverbs of the superlative degree ; as, *doctissimē, fortissimē* : But *benē* and *malē* are short.

## I.

14 \*. *I* final is long ; as,  
*Dominī, patrī, docerī.*

Except. 1. Greek vocatives are short ; as, *Alexī, Amarryllī.*

Except. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common ; as, *Pallādi, Minoīdi. Mihi, tibi, sibi* are also common : So likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi* ; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicubī* and *necubī* are always short.

## O.

15 †. *O* final is common ; as,  
*Virgo, Amo, quando.*

Except. 1. Monosyllables are long ; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō* : and the dative and ablative sing. of the second declension ; as, *librō, dominō* : Also Greek nouns ; as, *Didō*, and *Athō* the genit. of *Athos* : and adverbs derived from nouns ; as, *certō, falsō, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their com-

\* I longum pono. Vocitantum corripe Græcis.  
His tamen at ternus dabitur crescentibus anceps.  
Sic variato *mibi, tibi* cum *sibi* : sed magè curtis  
Vult *ibi*, vultque *cui, nisi*, mox *ubi*, cum *quasi*, jungi.  
*Sicuti* sed breviant, cum *necubi, sicubi*, vates.

† O commune loces. Dabis at monosyllaba longis,  
Græcaque ceu *Dido*, ternum sextumque secundæ,  
Et patriam Græcum, atque adverbia nomine nata,  
*Quò* jungens & *eò*. Variant at *denuò, serò*,  
*Mutuò, postremò, verò* : *modò* sed breve pones.  
Sæpiùs *ambo, duo, scio* corripe, & *illicò, & imò*,  
Et *cedo da* signans, *ego* queis *homo*, cum *citò*, junte.  
Sunt aliis variata Gerundia, longa Maroni.  
*Ergò* pro causa produc : secus editur anceps.

pounds;



pounds, *quōvis*, *quōcunque*, *adeō*, *ideō*; likewise *illō*, *id-circō*, *citrō*, *intrō*, *retrō*, *ultrō*.

Except. 2. The following words are short; *Egō*, *sciō*, *cedō* a defective verb, *homō*, *citō*, *illicō*, *immō*, *duō*, *ambō*, *modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō*, *dummodō*, *postmodō*: but some of these are also found long.

### *U* and *Y*.

16\*. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *Vultū*: *Molŷ*.

### *B*, *D*, *L*, *M*, *R*, *T*.

17. *B*†, *D*‡, *L*||, *R*\*\*, and *T*, in the end of a word, make the foregoing vowel short; as,

*Ab*, *apŭd*, *semĕl*, *precōr*, *capŭt*.

*M*†† final antiently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *Militŭm octo*, Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *millit'octo*; except in compound words; as, *circŭmāgo*, *circŭmeo*.

The following words are long, *sāl*, *sōl*, *nīl*; *pār*, *fār*, *lār*, *Nār*, *cūr*, *fūr*; also nouns which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr*, *vēr*, *Ibēr*; likewise *aēr*, *æthēr*: to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb*, *Daniēl*, *David*.

### *C*, *N*.

18. *C*‡‡ and *N*|||, in the end of a word, are long; as,

*Ac*, *sīc*, *nōn*.

The

\* *U* semper longis, sed *Y* raptis jungere oportet.

† Corripe *B* Latium: peregrinum at tendere malim.

‡ *D* breve ponatur. Variare at Barbara possis.

|| *L* breve fit. Cum *sol*, *sal*, *nil*, tolluntur Hebræa.

\*\* *R* brevies. Produc cujus dat patrius *eris*:

Addito *Iber*, *aēr*, *æther*. Sit *Celtiber* anceps.

At *par*, *far*, *lar*, *Nar*, quoque *cur*, *fur*, adjice longis.

†† *M* nunc vocalis perimit: rapuere vetusti.

‡‡ *C* produc, præter *nec*, *donec*: sed variabis

*Hic* benè pronomen: *fac* verbum jungimus isti.

||| *N* produc. Demas *EN inis* dans, quæque priore

Græca



The following words are short, *nēc* and *donēc*; *forſităn*, *în*, *forſăn*, *taměn*, *ăn*, *viděn*; likewise nouns in *en* which have *în* in the genitive; as, *carměn*, *criměn*; together with ſeveral Greek nouns; as, *Iliôn*, *Pylôn*, *Alexîn*. The pronoun *hic* and the verb *ſac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

19. AS\*, ES†, and OS‡, in the end of a word, are long; as, *Mās*, *quiēs*, *bonōs*.

The following words are ſhort, *anās*, *ēs* from *ſum*, *penēs*, *ōs* having *offis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs*; alſo a great many Greek nouns of all theſe three terminations; as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās*, *herōās*, *Phrygēs*, *Arcadōs*, *Tenēdōs*, *Mēlos*, &c. and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult. of the genitive increaſing ſhort; as, *Alēs*, *hebēs*, *obsēs*. But *Cerēs*, *pariēs*, *ariēs*, *abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

20. IS||, US\*\*, and YS††, in the end of a word, are ſhort; as, *Turrīs*, *legīs*, *legimūs*, *annūs*, *Capŷs*.

Except.

Græca per ON caſus numero tenuère ſecundæ;  
Et quartum caſum, ſi ſit brevis ultima recti.  
Sin quoque pluralis ternæ conjunge Pelasgum:  
*Forſitan*, *in*, *forſan*, *tamen*, *an*, *viden'* inſuper addens.

\* AS produc. Patrio ſed *adis* quod ſectit, *anaſque*,  
Sit breve: plurales ternæ quibus addito quartus.

† Ponitur ES longum. Pluralia corripe Græca  
Quæ creſcunt; velut *es* de *ſum*: *penes* additur illi;  
Cum neutris; & quæ patrii penultima curta eſt  
Ternæ. Tolle *Ceres*, *paries*, *aries*, *abies*, *pes*.

‡ OS produc. Patrius brevis eſt, & *compōs* & *impōs*,  
Oſque *offis* præbens. Rectos breviato ſecundæ  
(O niſi det patrius:) neutra his dein addito Graiūm.

|| IS brevio. Verūm plurales protraho caſus;  
ISque quod in patrio mutatur in *itis* & *inis*,  
Aut *entis*; *gratiſque*, *foris*, *glis*, *vis* quoque, nomen  
Seu verbum fuerit: ſicut & perſona ſecunda  
Protrahit IS, quoties *itis* plurale reponit.  
In ſubjunctivi *ris* eſt commune futuro.

\*\* US correpta datur. Monosyllaba cum genitivis

T

Ternæ



Except. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pen- nīs, librīs, nobīs, omnīs* for *omnes, fructūs, manūs*: also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portūs*.

Except. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *ītis, īnis, or entis*; as, *līs, Samnīs, Salamīs, Si- moīs*: To these add the adverbs *gratis* and *forīs*; the noun *glīs*, and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *ītis*; as, *audīs, abīs, possīs*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Except. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs, sūs*: also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, un- tis, or ōdis*; as, *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, amāthūs, tripūs*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension; as, *Cliūs, Sapphūs, Mantūs*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthūs*.

Except. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcys, Trachys*.

The last syllable of every verse is common: or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause or sus- pension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronun- ciation.

## The QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE and COM- POUND words.

### *Derivatives.*

21\*. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Amicus,

Ternæ vel quartæ produc: numerique secundi  
In quarta primum, quartum, quintumque; & in *uris*,  
Dumve in *utis* patrius, vel in *udis*, & *untis*, *odisve* est;  
Aut quintus fit in *u*; longus tum rectus habetur.  
Ergo produces venerabile nomen IESUS.

†† *YS* junges brevibus. *Tethys* reperitur at anceps.  
Longaque sunt rectis aliter quæ casibus *YN* dant.

\* Derivata tenent mensuram primigenorum:  
Orta tamen brevibus, *suspicio, regula, sedes*,  
*Seciūs, humanus, penuria, mobilis, humor*,

*Jumentum*



Amicus, <i>from</i> amo.	Exūlo, <i>from</i> exul, -ūlis.
Auctiōnor, auctio, -ōnis.	Pāvidus, pāveo.
Auctōro, auctor, -ōris.	Quirito, Quiris, -itis.
Audītor, auditum.	Radīcor, radix, -īcis.
Auspīcor, auspex, -īcis.	Sospīto, sospes, -itis.
Caupōnor, caupo, -ōnis.	Pāvidus, pāveo.
Colōro, color, -ōris.	Nātura, nātus.
Cornīcor, cornix, -īcis.	Māternus, māter.
Custōdio, custos, -ōdis.	Lēgebam, &c. lēgo.
Decōrus, decor, -ōris.	Legeram, &c. lēgi.
Decōro, decus, -ōris.	

## EXCEPTIONS.

### 1. Long from short.

Dēni, <i>from</i> dēcem.	Suspīcio, <i>from</i> suspīcor.	Mōbīlis, <i>from</i> mōveo.
Fōmes, fōveo.	Sēdes, sēdeo.	Hūmor, hūmus.
Hūmanus, hōmo.	Sēcus, sēcus.	Jūmentum, jūvo, &c.
Rēgula, rēgo.	Pēnuria, pēnus.	

### 2. Short from long.

Arena and ārista, <i>from</i> areo.	Lūcerna, <i>from</i> lūceo.
Nōta, nōtus.	Dux, -ūcis, dūco.
Vādum, vādo.	Stābilis, stābam.
Fīdes, fīdo.	Dītio, dis, dītis.
Sōpor, sōpio.	Quāfillus, qualus, &c.

### Compounds.

22. Compounds follow\* the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

*Dēdūco*, of *dē* and *dūco*. So, *prōfēro*, *antēfēro*, *consolor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *enōdo*, *ērūdio*, *exūdo*, *incēro*, *inhūmo*, *investīgo*, *prægrāvo*, *prænāto*, *rēgēlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *prægrāvus*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco*, *diffīdit* from *diffīdo*, and *diffīdit* from *dis-*

*Jumentum*, *fomes*, *primam* *producere* *gaudent*.  
*Corripiunt* *sed* *arista*, *vadium*, *sopor* *atque* *lucerna*,  
*Duxque* *ducis*, *stabilisque*, *fides*, *ditioque*, *quāfillus*,  
*Nata* *licet* *longis*; *quæ* *pluraque* *suggeret* *usus*.

- \* *Simplicium* *servant* *legem* *composita* *suorum*,  
*Quamvis* *diphthongus* *vel* *vocalis* *varietur*.  
*At* *breviant* *nihilum* *cum* *pejero*, *dejero*, *nec* *non*  
*Veridicus*, *fociis* *junctis*, & *semisopitus*.  
*Cognitus* *his* *addes*, *velut* *agnitus*, *innubus*, *atque*  
*Pronubus* : *at* *longis* *ambitus* *mobile* *junges*,  
*Imbecillus* *item* : *sed* *connubium* *variabis*.



*fīdo*, *indīco* and *indīco*, *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effōdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so *exēdit* and *exēdit*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnimus* and *devēnimus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo*; *incīdo*, from *in* and *cādo*, *suffōco*, from *sub* and *faux*, *-aucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *āumitto*, *pērcello*, *dēosculor*, *prōhibeo*.

Except. 1. *Agnitum*, *cognitum*, *dējēro*, *pejēro*, *innūba*, *pronūba*, *maledīcus*, *veridīcus*, *nihilum*, *femisōpītus*; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *hīlum*, and *sōpio*: *ambītus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambītus* and *ambītio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Except. 2\*. The preposition *pro* is short in the following words: *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōnep-tis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfānus*, *prōfecto*, *prō-cella*, *protervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful: *propago*, to propagate; *propīno*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpīna*.

Except. 3†. The inseparable prepositions *se* and *di* are long; as, *sēpāro*, *dīvello*: except *dīrimo*, *dīsertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rēmitto*, *rēsēro*: except in the impersonal verb *rēsert*.

Except. 4‡. *E*, *i*, and *o*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; as, *nēfas*, *nēque*, *patēsfacio*, &c. *omnīpotens*, *agrīcōla*, *signīfico*, &c. *duōdē-cim*, *hōdie*, *sacrōsanctus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long, when it is varied

\* Est PRO breve in Græcis, PRO longum ritè Latinis.

At rape quæ fundus, fugio, neptisque, neposque,

Et festum, fari, fateor, fanumque creârunt.

Hisce profectò addes, pariterque procella, protervus,

Atque propago genus, propago protrahe vitis.

Propina varia, verbum propago, profundo:

Cum pello, curo genitis, Proserpina junge.

† SE produc & DI, præter dirimo atque disertus.

Est RE breve: at viduum personis protrahe refert.

‡ Pars si componens fini prior i vel o donat,

Sit breve: vaticinor monstraverit, Arctophylaxque.



by cases ; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *tantīdem*, *eīdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately ; as, *ludīmagister*, *lucrīfacio*, *sīquis*, &c. *Idem* in the masc. is long, in the neuter short ; also *ubīque*, *ibīdem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

## A C C E N T.

*Accent* is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is founded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphāsīs*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds ; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [ / ] ; as, *prófero*, *prófer*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone ; and is thus marked [ \ ] ; as, *doctè*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

3. The *circumflex* accent first raises, and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable ; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [ ^ ] ; as, *amāre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction ; as in these adverbs, *ali-quò*, *continuò*, *doctè*, *unà*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poētā*, *gloriā*, in the ablative : *fructūs*, *tumultūs*. in the genitive : *nostrū*, *vestrū*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos* : *ergò*, on account of : *occīdit*, he slew ; *Pompilī*, for *Pompilii* ; *amāris*, for *amaveris*, &c.

## V E R S E.

A *VERSE* is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.



It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line. The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure, than to regulate its pronunciation.

## F E E T.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

### 1. Feet of two syllables.

*Spondæus*, consists of two long ; as, *ōmnēs*.

*Pyrrhichius*, two short ; as, *dēūs*.

*Iambus*, a short and a long ; as, *āmāns*.

*Trochæus*, a long and a short ; as, *sērvūs*.

### 2. Feet of three syllables.

*Dactylus*, a long and two short ; as, *scribēre*.

*Anapæstus*, two short and a long ; as, *piētās*.

*Amphimæcer*, a long, a short, and a long ; as, *chāritās*.

*Tribrachys*, three short ; as, *dōminūs*.

The following are not much used.

*Molossus*, *dēlectānt*.

*Amphibrachys*, *bēnōrē*.

*Bacchius*, *dōlōrēs*.

*Antibacchius*, *pēlluntūr*.

### 3. Feet of four syllables.

*Proceleusmaticus*, *hōmīnībūs*.

*Dispondeus*, *ōrātōrēs*.

*Dijambus*, *āmānitās*.

*Choriambus*, *pōntificēs*.

*Diurochæus*, *cāntilēnā*.

*Antispæstus*, *Alēxāndēr*.

*Ionicus minor*, *prōpērābant*.

*Ionicus major*, *cālcāribūs*.

*Pæon primus*, *tēmpōribūs*.

*Pæon secundus*, *pōtēntiā*.

*Pæon tertius*, *ānīmātūs*.

*Pæon quartus*, *cēlērītās*.

*Epitritus primus*, *vōlūptātēs*.

*Epitritus secundus*, *pænītētēs*.

*Epitritus tertius*, *dīscōrdiās*.

*Epitritus quartus*, *fōrtūnātūs*.

## D I F F E R E N T K I N D S O F V E R S E.

### 1. Hexameter.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these



these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee ; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees ; as,

*Lūdērē | quæ vël- | lēm cālă- | mō pēr- | mīsīt ă- | grēstī.*

Virg.

*Infān- | dūm, Rē- | gīnă, jŭ- | bēs rēnŏ- | vārē dŏ- | lŏrēm.*

Id.

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic* ; as,

*Cāră Dē- | ūm sŏbŏ- | lēs mă- | gnūm Jŏvis | incrē- | mētūm.*

Virg.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it ; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel ; as,

*Omniă | Mērcūrī- | ō sīmī- | līs vŏ- | cēmquē cŏ- | lŏrēmque*  
*Et flavos crines —*

Virg.

## 2. Pentameter.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees ; the third always a spondee ; and the fourth and fifth, an anapæstus ; as,

*Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr sē- | mīnă quīs- | quē sūæ.* Propert.  
*Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pūs īn ōm- | nē mēis.* Ovid.

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves ; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a Cæfura ; the latter, always of two dactyles and another Cæfura : thus,

*Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr | sēmīnă | quīsquē sŭ- | æ.*  
*Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs īn | ōmnē mē- | is.*

## 3. Asclepiadæan.

The Asclepiadæan verse consists of four feet ; to wit, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius ; as,

*Mæcē- | nās ātāvīs | ēdītē rē- | gībŭs.* Hor.

But this verse may be more properly measured thus : In  
the



the first place, a spondee ; in the second a dactyle ; then a cæfura ; and after that two dactyles ; thus,

*Mæce- | nas ata- | vis | edite | regibus.*

#### 4. Glyconian.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius ; as,

*Nāvis | quæ tibi crē- | dītūm.* Horat.

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles ; thus,

*Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.*

#### 5. Sapphic.

The Sapphic verse has five feet, viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees ; thus,

*Intē- | gēr vī- | tæ, scēlē- | rīsquē | pūrūs.* Horat.

#### 6. Adonian.

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and spondee ; as,

*Jūpītēr | ūrgēt.* Horat.

#### 7. Pherecratian.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee ; thus,

*Nīgrīs | æquōrā | vēntīs.* Horat.

#### 8. Phaleucian.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet, to wit, a spondee, dactyle, and three trochees ; as,

*Sūmmām | nēc mētū- | ās dī- | ēm, nēc | ōptēs.* Mart.

#### 9. The greater Alcaic.

The greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and Cæfura, then two dactyles ; as,

*Virtūs | rēpūl- | sæ | nēscīā | sōrdidæ.* Horat.

#### 10. Archilochian.

The Archilochian iambic verse consists of four feet. In the



the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus ; in the second and fourth, always an iambus ; and in the end, a Cæfura ; as,

*Nēc sū- | mīt, aūt | pōnīt | sēcū- | rēs.* Horat.

### 11. *The lesser Alcaic.*

The lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees ; as,

*Arbitrī- | ō pōpū- | lārīs | aūræ.* Horat.

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured ; such as the dactylic, trochaic, anapæstic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

### 12. *Iambic.*

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimēter* ; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimēter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse ; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus ; thus,

Dimeter, *Inār- | sīt æ- | stūō- | siūs.* Horat.

Trimeter, *Sūīs | ēt ī- | psā Rō- | mā vī- | rībūs | rūīt.* Id.

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places ; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth ; for the last foot must always be an iambus ; thus,

Dimeter, *Cānīdī- | ā trā- | ctāvīt | dāpēs.* Horat.

*Vīdē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dōmūm.* Id.

Trimeter,



Trimeter, *Quōquō | scēlē- | stī rūi- | tīs aūt | cūr dēx- |*  
*tērīs. Id.*

*Pāvīdūm- | quē lēpō- | r' aūt ād | vēnām | lăquēō |*  
*grūēm. Id.*

*Alitī- | būs āt- | quē cānī- | būs hōmī | cīd' Hē- |*  
*ctōrēm.*

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Octonarius*.

A verse which hath just the number of feet requisite, is called *Versus Acatalectic*, an *Acatalectic* verse; if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectic*; if there be a syllable too much, it is called *Hypercatalectic* or *Hypermeter*.

*Note*, It is not of great importance, whether these names, and several others of the same nature which follow, be remembered by the learner or not. They are here made use of, and explained, that they may not appear strange, when they occur in other books.

## COMBINATION OF VERSES.

The different kinds of verses are variously combined in poems.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, *Monocolon*; that which has two kinds, *Dicolon*; and that which has three kinds of verse, *Tricolon*.

That which consists of two kinds of verse, and always after two lines returns to the first, is called *Dicolon Distrophon*; as, when a single pentameter is alternately placed after an hexameter, which is named *Elegiac* verse, because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

*Flebilis indignos, Elegia, solve capillos.*

*Ab! nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit. Ovid.*

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicolon Tristrophon*; when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetraströphon*; as,

*Auream quisquis mediocritatem  
 Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti  
 Sordibus tecti; caret invidendā  
 Sobrius aulā.*

Horat.

When



When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricolon Tristrophon*; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetrastrrophon*; as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic, which is named the *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because frequently used by Horace; thus,

*Virtus recludens immeritis mori  
Cælum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;  
Cætusque vulgares, et udam  
Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.*

Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

## SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*; as,

Spond.	Dact.	Spond.	Spond.	Dact.	Spond.
<i>Fēlīx</i>   <i>quī pōtū-</i>   <i>it rē-</i>   <i>rūm cōg-</i>   <i>nōscērē</i>   <i>cāusās, &amp;c.</i>					
S.	D.	S.	S.	D.	S.
<i>Illūm</i>   <i>nōn pōpū-</i>   <i>lī fā-</i>   <i>scēs nōn</i>   <i>pūrpūrā</i>   <i>rēgūm,</i>					
D.	S.	D.	S.	D.	S.
<i>Flēxit, et</i>   <i>īnfī-</i>   <i>dōs āgī-</i>   <i>tāns dīs-</i>   <i>cōraīā</i>   <i>frātrēs.</i>					
Lucret.					

## FIGURES in SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalæpha*, *Eclipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*; *Systole*, and *Diastole*.

1\*. *Synalæpha* is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

*Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant.* Virg.

to be scanned thus,

*Cōntīcū-* | *ēr' ōm-* | *nēs īn-* | *tēntī-* | *qu' ōrā tē-* | *nēbānt.*

\* *Vocalem Synalæpha, Eclipsis & m quoque tollit,  
Altera cūm voci est vocalis prima sequenti.*



The *Synalæpha* is sometimes neglected ; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô, heu, ah, proh, vœ, vah, hei* ; as,

*O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. Virg.*

2. *Ecthlipsis* is, when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel ; as,

*O curas hominum ! O quantum est in rebus inane ? Perf.*  
thus,

*O cû- | rās hōmī- | n', ô quān- | t' ēst in | rēbūs in- | ānē.*

3\*. *Synæresis* is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis* ; as *Phæthon*, for *Phæthon*. So *ëi* in *deinde*, *Pompei* ; *öi*, in *proinde* ; *ëâ*, in *aureâ* ; thus,

*Aureâ percussum virgâ, versumque venenis. Virg.*

4. *Diæresis* divides one syllable into two ; as, *Tröiæ* for *Trojæ* ; *Persëus*, for *Perseus* ; *milïus*, for *milvus*.

5. *Systöle*† is when a long syllable is made short ; as the pênult in *tulerunt* ; thus,

*Matri longa decem tulerunt fastidia menses. Virg.*

6. *Diaströle* is when a syllable usually short is made long ; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse ;

*Confidant, si tantus amôr, et mænia condant.*

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of Diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, tho' some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called *Prosthësis*‡ ; as, *gnavus*, for *navus* ; *tetûli*, for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called *Epenthësis* ; as, *relligio*,

\* Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* esto.  
Distrahit in geminas resoluta *Diæresis* unam.

† *Systola* præcipitat vocales ritè trahendas.  
Protrahit huic adversa *Diaströla* corripandas.

‡ *PROSTHESIS* apponit capiti, sed *APHÆRESIS* aufert.  
*SYNCOPA* de medio tollit, sed *EPENTHESIS* addit.  
*Abstrahit* *APOCOPE* fini, sed dat *PARAGOGÉ*.  
*Constringit* *CRASIS*, distraëta *DIÆRESIS* effert.  
*Litera si legitur transposita*, *METATHESIS* exit.  
*ANTITHESIN* dices, tibi *litera si* varietur.



for *religio*; *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called *Paragōge*: as, *dici-er*, for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called *Aphærēsis*; as, *natus*, for *gnatus*; *tenderant*, for *tetenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called *Syncōpe*; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti*; *deūm*, for *deorum*: If from the end, *Apocōpe*; as, *viden'*, for *videsne*; *Antōnī*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called *Metathēsis*; as, *pistris*, for *pristis*; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another it is called *Antithēsis*; as, *faciundum*, for *faciendum*; *olli*, for *illi*, *voltis*, for *vultis*.

But what particularly deserves attention in scanning verse, especially hexameter, is the *Cæsura*.

*Cæsura* is, when after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

S.                      D.                      S.

*At rē-gīnā grā-vī jāmi-dudum, &c.*

The *Cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimēris*: When on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris*: When it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemimēris*: and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennēmimēris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

*Illē lā-tūs nivē-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hŷā-cīnthō.* Virg.

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause*; as,

*Tityre dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas.* Virg.

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it  
U renders



renders it long ; as the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose ; as,

*Rōmæ mæniā tērrūit impīgēr Hānnibāl ārmīs.* Ennius.

The antient Romans in pronouncing verse paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronounciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully ; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it ; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

## ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of syllables in English verse is not precisely ascertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monosyllables are generally either long or short, as occasion requires. And in words of two or more syllables, the accented syllable is always long.

Of English verse there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verse*.

In rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verse similarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately ; and therefore



therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, *i.e.* consisting of a short and a long syllable ; as, *àlōst*, *crēāte* : or *Trochaic*, *i.e.* consisting of a long and a short syllable ; as, *hōly*, *lōstly*. In verses of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even syllables ; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

I. IAMBIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of *four syllables*, or of *two feet* ; as,

With ravish'd ears,  
The monarch hears. *Dryden.*

2. Of *six syllables*, or of *three feet* ; as,

Aloft in awful state,  
The godlike hero sat. *Dryden.*

3. Of *eight syllables*, or of *four feet* ; as,

While dangers hourly round us rise,  
No caution guards us from surprise. *Fran. Horace.*

4. Of *ten syllables*, or of *five feet*, which is the common measure of heroic and tragic poetry ; as,

Poetic fields encompass me around,  
And still I seem to tread on Classic ground ;  
For here the muse so oft her harp has strung,  
That not a mountain rears its head unfung. *Addison.*

Obs. 1. In measures of this last sort, we sometimes find the last line of a couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verse : thus,

A needless Alexandrine ends the song,  
Which, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along. *Pope.*

Waller was smooth ; but Dryden taught to join  
The varying verse, the full resounding line,  
The long majestic march, and energy divine.

}  
} *Pope.*



We also find the last verse of a triplet stretched out to fourteen syllables, or seven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verse before it; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is drest ;  
 For thee the ocean smiles, and smooths her wavy breast,  
 And heaven itself with more serene and purer light is blest. }  
Dryden.

Sometimes also, when there is no Alexandrine before it; thus,

At length by fate to power divine restor'd,  
 His thunder taught the world to know its lord,  
 The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. }  
Rowe.

Obs. 2. The more strictly iambic these verses are, the more harmonious. In several of them, however, particularly in those of ten syllables, we often meet with a trochee, and likewise a spondee, instead of an iambus. Verses of heroic measure sometimes also admit a dactyle, or an anapestus, in place of the iambus; in which case a verse of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen syllables; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14  
 And many an humorous, many an amorous lay  
 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12  
 Was sung by many a Bard on many a day.

This manner of writing every syllable fully is now generally used by the best poets, and seems much more proper than the ancient custom of cutting off vowels by an apostrophe. Our language abounds too much in consonants of itself: the elision of vowels therefore should be avoided as much as possible, and ought only to be admitted where it is absolutely necessary; as, *o'er*, for *over*; *e'er*, for *ever*, &c. The same observation may be applied to every kind of measure.

## II. TROCHAIC MEASURE comprises verses,

### 1. Of *three syllables*; as,

Dreadful gleams,  
 Dismal screams, &c. Pope.

### 2. Of



3. Of *five syllables*; as,

In the days of old,  
Stories plainly told,  
Lovers felt annoy.

3. Of *seven syllables*; as,

Fairest piece of well form'd earth,  
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller.*

These are the measures which are most commonly used in English poetry, especially those of seven, eight, and ten syllables.

We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called *Anapestic* measure, *i.e.* a verse consisting of feet of three syllables, two short, and one long, in which the accent rests upon every third syllable. Verses of anapestic measure consist of two, three, or four feet; that is, of six, nine, or twelve syllables; thus,

Let the loud trumpets sound,  
'Till the roofs all around,  
The shrill echoes rebound. *Pope.*

From the plains, from the woodlands, and groves,  
How the nightingales warble their loves! *Shenstone.*

May I govern my passions with absolute sway,  
And grow wiser and better, as life wears away.

In this measure, a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot; as,

The sword or the dart  
Shall pierce my sad heart. *Addison.*

Ye shepherds so cheerful and gay,  
Whose flocks never carelessly roam, &c.

I vow'd to the muses my time and my care,  
Since neither could win me the smiles of the fair.

*Shenstone.*

These measures are variously combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in short poems; for generally in longer works the same measure is always observed.

Stanzas are composed of more or fewer verses, and these  
U 3 variously



variously diversified, according to the nature of the subject, and the taste of the poet. But when they are stretched out to a great length, and consist of verses of many different measures, they are seldom agreeable.

Such poems as consist of stanzas, which are not confined to a certain number of verses, nor the verses to a certain number of syllables, nor the rhymes to a certain distance, are called *Irregular*, or *Pindaric odes*. Of this kind are several of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the strophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the most frequent, in which the first verse answers to the third, and the third to the fourth. There is a stanza of this kind, consisting of verses of eight and of six syllables alternately, which is very often used, particularly in sacred poetry. Here for the most part the second and fourth lines only rhyme together; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,  
My rising soul surveys:  
Transported with the view, I'm lost  
In wonder, love, and praise. *Addison.*

Sometimes also the first and third lines answer to one another; as,

Keep silence, all created things,  
And wait your maker's nod:  
The muse stands trembling while she sings  
The honours of her God. *Watts.*

This stanza is used in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verses, each consisting of fourteen syllables, having a pause after the eighth syllable.

Several of the above measures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional short syllable at the end of the verse; as,

1. *In heroic measure, or verses of ten syllables, both in blank verse and rhyme.*

*In Blank Verse,*

'Tis heaven itself that points out an hereafter. *Addison.*

*In rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme,*  
The piece, you think, is incorrect? Why, take it,  
I'm all submission; what you'd have it, make it. *Pope.*

2. *In*



2. *In verses of eight syllables.*

They neither added nor confounded,  
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verses of six syllables.*

'Twas when the seas were roaring,  
With hollow blasts of wind,  
A damsel lay deploring  
All on a rock reclin'd. *Gay.*

4. *In verses of seven syllables.*

As Palemon, unsuspecting,  
Prais'd the sly musician's art;  
Love, his light disguise rejecting,  
Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Shenstone.*

5. *In verses of three syllables.*

Glooms inviting,  
Birds delighting. *Addison.*

6. *In the Anapestic measure.*

Ah! friend, 'tis but idle to make such a pother:  
Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Shenstone.*

Now with furies furrounded,  
Despairing, confounded. *Pope.*

Double rhyme is used chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burlesque compositions.

Verses with double endings, in blank verse, most frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect; thus,

I here devote thee for my prince and country;  
Let them be safe, and let me nobly perish. *Thomson.*

The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,  
Darkness inclos'd, and the winds whistled round me. *Otway.*



## A P P E N D I X.

### *Of Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman Month.*

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters, called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are, the *Comma* ( , ), *Semicolon* ( ; ), *Colon* ( : ), *Period*, *Punctum*, or full stop ( . ).

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence compleat by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half-member, is a less constructive part, or subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part, of a sentence in this way of considering it. For the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod* or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the *Colon*, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end ; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronounciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon ; the colon, double of the semicolon ; and the semicolon, double of the comma.

There



There are other points, which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point ( ? ), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point ( ! ), and the *Parenthesis* ( ). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semi-colon, a colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other *marks* made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are the *Apostrophe* ( ' ); *Asterisk* ( \* ); *Hyphen* ( - ); *Obelisk* ( † ); *Double Obelisk* ( ‡ ); *Parallel Lines* ( ‖ ); *Paragraph* ( ¶ ); *Section* ( § ); *Quotation* ( “ ” ); *Crotchets* [ ] ; *Brace* ( } ); *Ellipsis* ( ... or — ); *Caret* ( ^ ); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter:

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quintilius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*; M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senatus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra*, *Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books, A. D. marks *Anno Domini*; A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of arts; M. D. *Medicinæ Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital;  
as,



as, Etc. *Et cætera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Gneius*; Sex. *Sex-tius*; Cos. *Consul*; Cofs. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Impp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in English, Esq; *Esquire*; Dr *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*; e. g. *exempli gratiâ*; . g. *verbi gratiâ*.

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I. denotes *one*, V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combination of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V and L are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it stands for to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninty.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

*A thousand* is marked thus, *ciô*. which in later times was contracted into *m*. *Five hundred* is marked thus, *io*. or, by contraction, *d*.

The annexing of *ô* to *io*. makes its value ten times greater; thus, *ioô*. marks *five thousand*; and *ioôô*. *fifty thousand*.

The prefixing of *c*, together with the annexing of *ô* to the number *ciô*. makes its value ten times greater; thus, *ccioô* denotes *ten thousand*; and *cccioôô*. *a hundred thousand*. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, *cccioôô*, *cccioôô*. signified *two hundred thousand*, &c



We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus,  $\overline{\text{iii}}$ . denotes *three thousand*;  $\overline{\text{x}}$ . *ten thousand*.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters, or *Figures*, which, from the ten fingers of the hands, were called *Digits*; 1 *one*, 2 *two*, 3 *three*, 4 *four*, 5 *five*, 6 *six*, 7 *seven*, 8 *eight*, 9 *nine*, 0 *nought*, *nothing*. The first nine are called *Significant Figures*. The last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed after one another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left thus,

8 Eight. 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times; thus,

1 One. 10 Ten. 100 A hundred. 1000 A thousand.  
2 Two. 20 Twenty. 200 Two hundred. 2000 Two thousand.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together: CIO, DCCCLXXX. or M, DCCCLXXX. 1780.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

### *Division of the Roman months.*

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the nones fell upon the seventh day, and the ides on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked, *Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias*



*arias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante* : The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante* ; or, *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus*, or *Decembris* : The day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante* : The day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked, *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris* ; The day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias* ; and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

F I N I S.

